



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Price One Shilling.

A GRAMMAR
OF
THE GERMAN LANGUAGE,

ADAPTED FOR
THE USE OF ENGLISH STUDENTS,
FROM
Weyle's Theoretical and Practical German Grammar.

BY G. L. STRAUSS, PH. DR.,
Professor and Translator of Languages.

LONDON: JOHN WEALE, 1852.



600089705Z





A
GRAMMAR
OF THE
GERMAN LANGUAGE,
ADAPTED FOR THE
USE OF ENGLISH STUDENTS,

FROM
Beyle's Theoretical and Practical German Grammar.

BY
G. L. STRAUSS, PH. DR.,
PROFESSOR AND TRANSLATOR OF LANGUAGES.



London:
JOHN WEALE, 59, HIGH HOLBORN.

MDCCCLII.

303. c. 135.

WILLIAM HENRY COX,
5, GREAT QUEEN STREET, LINCOLN'S-INN-FIELDS.

PREFACE.

THIS Grammar is intended to serve the English student of the German language, as a guide to the art of speaking and writing *correct* German. That it might answer this purpose to the fullest possible extent has been the chief object of my endeavours; and I think I may safely assert, that no rule of any importance has been omitted; and that the student, when he has occasion to consult this work, will hardly ever find himself disappointed in obtaining the information which he seeks.

For the sake of greater uniformity, and also to make the work every way plain and intelligible, the German text is printed the same as the English, in Latin type. On reference to the German alphabet, it will be seen that the Germans make use of four distinct characters for the letter *s* (and *ss*); viz., *f*—soft *s*—at the commencement of a syllable; *s* at the end of a syllable; *ſ* (*/s*)—hard *s*—after long vowels and diphthongs; *ff* (*/ʃ* [*/s*] when standing at the end of a syllable)—double hard *s*—after short vowels. When German is printed in Latin type, or written in Latin character, a common short *s* is now mostly substituted for the long *f*; *ss* for *ff* and *ſ* (*/s*); and *fs* for *ſ* (*/z*). However, grammars and dictionaries are *works of reference* in which the student has a right to expect to find every word spelt *correctly*; in a German grammar or dictionary, therefore, *printed in Latin type*, every word ought to be spelt exactly as it is printed or written in *German* type or character.

It will be seen that I have, in the present work, and in the “Reader,” which is published in connection with it, acted strictly

upon this principle. Even all other considerations put aside, I am convinced that the student will, after a time, fully appreciate the aid to a correct pronunciation of many words which the distinction between the letters *ff* (*fʰ*) and *f* affords. And should he acquire a sufficient knowledge of the language to enable him to write a German letter in *German character*, he will be glad indeed to have learnt from the commencement to distinguish between the several different representatives of the German letter *s*.

In conclusion, I beg to call the student's attention to the list of *errata*, page viii., and to request that he will correct them in the text.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

	<i>Page</i>
The Alphabet	1
Pronunciation of the Vowels	2
Diphthongs	5
Semi-vowels	ib.
Consonants	6
Accentuation	9
Orthography	11
Use of Capital Initials	12
Punctuation	16

CHAPTER I.—THE ARTICLE AND THE SUBSTANTIVE.

Declension of the Articles	19
Use of the Articles	20
The Substantive—Introductory Remarks	23
Sect. I. The Gender	29
Sect. II. Declension of Substantives—General Rules	38
a. Weak Declension	40
b. Strong Declension—First Form	42
Second Form	44
Declension of Infinitives, Adjectives, &c., used substantively	50
Non-Germanized Foreign Words	ib.
Proper Names	51
Formation of the Plural of Proper Names	54
Government of the Substantive	55

CHAPTER II.—THE PRONOUN.

Sect. I. Personal Pronouns	58
a. Definite Personal Pronouns	ib.
Reflexive Pronouns	68
Reciprocal Pronouns	ib.
b. Indefinite Personal Pronouns of the Third Person	64
Sect. II. Possessive Pronouns	65
Sect. III. Demonstrative Pronouns	67
Sect. IV. Determinative Pronouns	69
Sect. V. Interrogative Pronouns	71
Sect. VI. Relative Pronouns	73
Pronominal Adverbs	75

CHAPTER III.—THE ADJECTIVE.

Introductory Remarks	78
Comparison of Adjectives	79

	<i>Page</i>
Declension of Adjectives :	
1. Strong Form	82
2. Weak Form	84
3. Mixed Form	<i>ib.</i>
Additional Remarks on the Declension of Adjectives ...	85
Government of the Adjective	87

CHAPTER IV.—THE NUMERALS.

I. Definite Numerals	90
1. Cardinal Numbers	<i>ib.</i>
Numerals formed from the Cardinal Numbers :	
<i>a.</i> Distributive Numbers	92
<i>b.</i> Iterative Numbers	93
<i>c.</i> Multiplicative Numbers	<i>ib.</i>
<i>d.</i> Numeralia Specialia	<i>ib.</i>
2. Ordinal Numbers	94
Numerals formed from the Ordinal Numbers :	
<i>a.</i> Partitive Numbers	<i>ib.</i>
<i>b.</i> Dimidiative Numbers	<i>ib.</i>
<i>c.</i> Ordinal Adverbs	<i>ib.</i>
II. Indefinite Numerals	<i>ib.</i>

CHAPTER V.—THE VERB.

Preliminary Observations	98
Sect. I. Introductory Remarks	99
Sect. II. Conjugation of the Verb—Introductory Remarks ...	101
Auxiliary Verbs :	
<i>a.</i> of Tense	103
<i>b.</i> of Mode	107
<i>a.</i> Strong Conjugation	111
Inflections of the Strong Conjugation	<i>ib.</i>
Mutation of the Vowels	113
First Class	<i>ib.</i>
Second Class	114
Third Class	115
Fourth Class	116
Models of the Strong Conjugation	119
<i>b.</i> Weak Conjugation	122
<i>c.</i> Irregular Verbs	127
Interrogative and Negative Forms of Conjugation ...	129
Sect. III. Use of the respective Modes, Tenses, &c., of the Verb ...	130
Government of the Verb	139

CHAPTER VI.—THE ADVERB, THE PREPOSITION, THE CONJUNCTION,
AND THE INTERJECTION.

<i>a.</i> The Adverb	142
<i>b.</i> The Preposition	<i>ib.</i>
Sect. I. Prepositions which govern the Genitive Case ...	<i>ib.</i>
Sect. II. _____ Dative Case	145
Sect. III. _____ Accusative Case	148
Sect. IV. _____ Dative and Accusative Cases ...	<i>ib.</i>
Alphabetical List of the Prepositions	149
Conjunction	150

vii

Page

1. Copulative Conjunctions	...	...	...	...	151
2. Continuative Conjunctions	...	...	...	...	<i>ib.</i>
3. Partitive Conjunctions	...	...	...	...	<i>ib.</i>
4. Adversative :					
<i>a.</i> Restrictive	...	...	...	...	<i>ib.</i>
<i>b.</i> Repellative	...	...	...	...	152
5. Disjunctive	...	...	...	...	<i>ib.</i>
6. Local	...	...	1. Local	...	<i>ib.</i>
7. Temporal	...	...	2. Temporal	...	153
8. Comparative	...	...	3. Comparative	...	<i>ib.</i>
9. Proportional	...	...	4. Proportional	...	154
10. Restrictive	...	...	5. Restrictive	...	<i>ib.</i>
11. Illative or Conclusive	...	...	6. Illative or Conclusive	...	<i>ib.</i>
12. Causal	...	...	7. Causal	...	155
13. Final or Intentional	...	...	8. Final or Intentional	...	<i>ib.</i>
14. Conditional	...	...	9. Conditional	...	<i>ib.</i>
15. Concessive	...	...	10. Concessive	...	156
			11. Modal	...	<i>ib.</i>
			12. Conjunctions of Adjective Sentences :		
			<i>A.</i> Explanatory or Declaratory	...	<i>ib.</i>
			<i>B.</i> Exceptive	...	157
			13. Conjunctions of Substantive Sentences	...	<i>ib.</i>
Syntactic Influence of Conjunctions	...	...	...	...	<i>ib.</i>
<i>d.</i> The Interjection	...	...	...	...	158
Appendix	...	...	...	...	<i>ib.</i>

ERRATA.

Page 8, line 44, for *Queſtion*, read *Quäſtion*.

13, 51, insert a *comma* after *Ihrer*.

15, 8, for *perceive*, read *look to*.

15, 12, for *Willen's*, read *Willens*.

21, 19, 20, for *combinations*, read *combination*.

22, 13, insert a *comma* between *Fehler* and *als*.

27, 9, dele the *comma* between *Staude* and *der*.

27, 16, for *Kalkkopf*, read *Kahlkopf*.

36, 49, for *Verdammiſ*, read *Verdammiſ*.

53, 4, for *oration*, read *orations*.

54, 3, for *Sophocles*, read *Sophokles*.

61, 25, for *daſ*, read *daſ*.

67, 29, insert a *comma* between *Hunfried* and *zu*.

70, 32, for *hente*, read *heute*.

71, 16, for *einen*, read *einem*.

71, 24 and 25, put *semicolons* instead of the *commas*.

72, 24, for *compositions*, read *compounds*.

73, 31, insert a *comma* between *Haus* and *was*.

77, 23, for *rothlich*, read *röthlich*.

80, 25, for *from*, read *of*.

96, 13, dele *may*.

128, 25, for *däuchette*, read *däuchtete*.

130, 4, for *begleikat*, read *begleitet*.

137, 31 and 32 ought to be separated from the preceding lines.

Put *s* (long) instead of *s* (short), page 12, line 37 (*Heyse*); p. 18, line 1 (*sammelt*); p. 21, line 42 (*ist*); p. 46, line 13 (*Gastmahl*); p. 71, line 4 (*dem selben*); p. 137, line 2 (*sagte*); p. 144, line 28 (*Lessing*).

Put *small initials* for the *capitals*, page 76, lines 20, 32, and 33 (*Ge, Bar*) p. 77, lines 1, 8, 12, 31, 37, and 51 (*Ig, Iſch, Lich, Icht, Haft, En*); p. 78 lines 7, 9, 10, and 41 (*En, End, Et, Angſt*).

GRAMMAR

OF

THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

INTRODUCTION.

THE ALPHABET.

The complete German Alphabet consists of the following thirty-five letters.

NAME.	PRONOUNCED	NAME.	PRONOUNCED
A a ... Ah ...	like <i>a</i> in <i>far</i> .	Ü ü ...	... like the French <i>eu</i> in <i>pou, fou</i> .
Ä ä ... Ay ...	like <i>a</i> in <i>fate</i> , or <i>ay</i> in <i>day</i> .	P p ... Pey ...	<i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i> .
B b ... Bey }	<i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i> .	Q q ... Koo ...	lik <i>ecoo</i> in <i>cool</i> .
C c ... Tsey }		R r ... Err.	
Ch ch ... Tsey-hah, <i>hah</i> like <i>ha</i> in <i>half</i> .		S s ... Ess.	
D d ... Dey }	<i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i> .	sch ... Ess-tsey-hah.	
E e ... Ey }		f ... Ess-tset.	
F f ... Ef.		T t ... Tey ...	<i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i> .
G g ... Gey ... <i>g</i> as in <i>give</i> , <i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i> .		U u ... Oo ...	as in <i>room</i> .
H h ... Hah ... like <i>ha</i> in <i>half</i> .		Ü ü ...	... like the French <i>u</i> in <i>vu, salut, flute, fut</i> .
I i ... E.		V v ... Fou ...	as in <i>foul</i> .
J j ... Yot.		W w ... Vey ...	<i>ey</i> as in <i>they</i> .
K k ... Kah ... like <i>oa</i> in <i>oalf</i> .		X x ... Ix ...	as in <i>ris-dollar</i> .
ok ... Tsey-kah.		Y y ... Ypillon.	
L l ... El.		Z z ... Tset.	
M m ... Em.		ts ... Tey-tset.	
N n ... En.			
O o ... O.			

Twenty-five of these (*a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, y*), are simple letters, representing simple sounds.

Two (*x* and *s*) are simple letters, representing compound sounds (*ks* and *ts*).

Six (*ü, ö, ä, ch, sch, f*), are compound letters, representing simple sounds.

Two (*ck* and *ts*) are characters used in lieu, respectively, of *t* double letters *kk* and *ss*.

The letter *y*, although still admitted in the German Alphabet, is now never used in words originally German, and occurs only in words taken from the Greek, and in some proper names.

To the preceding thirty-five letters, we have still to add the compound consonant *ph*, which is pronounced like *f*, and the following diphthongs:—

NAME.	PRONOUNCED
Ai ai ... I ...	somewhat broader than <i>i</i> in <i>kite</i> , or <i>y</i> in <i>sky</i> .
Au au ... Ou ...	as in <i>loud</i> .
Äu äu ... Oi ...	somewhat broader than <i>oi</i> in <i>oil</i> , <i>cloister</i> .
Ei ei ... I ...	like <i>i</i> in <i>find</i> .
Eu eu ... Oi ...	somewhat less broad than <i>oi</i> in <i>loiter</i> .

Oi occurs only in a few proper names: *Broihau* a kind of light ale, *Boizenburg* a town in Germany, situated at the confluence of the rivers Boize and Elbe. It is pronounced like the English *oi*.

Ui, pronounced like the French *oui*, occurs only in *pfui* fy, *hui* quick, huzza, mark; *das Hui*, *ein Hui*, a moment, instant, trice; *Duisburg* a small town in Germany.

Ay and *Ey* are no longer used in German words, and occur only in a few proper names.

The following letters are susceptible of duplication:—

1. VOWELS: *a*, *e*, *o*.

2. CONSONANTS: *b*, *d*, *f*, *g* (*k*), *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, or rather *f*,* *t* (*z*).

As already stated, *ck* and *tz* are substituted in German for *kk* and *zz*, which latter characters, although used by some, are rejected by most authors and grammarians.

Not susceptible of duplication:—

1. The simple vowels *i*, *u*, and *y*.

2. The compound vowels and the diphthongs.

3. The semi-vowels *j* and *w*.

4. The simple consonants *c*, *h*, *g*, *v*, *x*.

5. The compound consonants *ch*, *sch*, and *ph*.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS.—I. VOWELS.

A (*aa—ah*).

A is pronounced either *long* or *short*. In the former case it sounds like *a* in *far*: *Vater* father, *Straße* street. In the latter, like *a* in *fat*: *Nacht* night, *blau* pale.

Aa and *ah* are invariably *long*. In their pronunciation the voice ought to dwell a little longer on the sound than in the pronunciation of the simple *long a*: *Aal* eel, *Haar* hair, *Bahn* path. In words like *Kanaan*, *Kaaba*, where the two *a*'s belong to two distinct syllables, they are of course pronounced separately: *Kana-an*, *Ka-aba*. In syllables with a *t*, the lengthening *h* is removed from the vowel and joined to the *t*: *Rath* counsel, *That* deed, *Thal* dale. In *Fahrt* journey,

* The character used for the double *f*, or rather *f*, is *ff* in the middle, and *f* at the end, of a syllable or word.

passage, however, the *h* retains its original position by the side of the *a*.

In *Karthauns* carronade, the *a* is short.

Note.—The preceding rule, regarding the transposition of the *h* in syllables with a *t*, applies equally to the other vowels and to the diphthongs; thus, e. g., *Thräne* tear, *Werth* worth, *Wirth* host, *theuer* dear, *Noth* need, *Muth* courage, *Thurm* tower, *Thau* dew, *Theil* part, &c.

Ä (äh).

Ä also is pronounced either *long* or *short*. In the former case it sounds like *a* in *mane* or *mate*, or like *ay* in *day*: *Kläger* plaintiff, *täglich* daily. In the latter, like *e* in *held*, *fell*, *rent*: *lästig* troublesome, *prächtig* splendid.

Äh is invariably *long* (vide *aa* and *ah*).

E (ee—eh).

E has principally two sounds; viz., the *pure* or *acute*, and the *grave* or *broad*.

The former resembles the English *ey* in *they*. It occurs but rarely in words with the simple *long e*: e. g., *edel* noble, *elend* miserable, *Esel* donkey, *Demuth* humility, *jeder* each, *ewig* eternal, *je, jemals* ever, at any time, *jemand* somebody, *jener* he, that one, *Regel* rule, *Schlesien* Silesia, *Schweden* Sweden, *wenig* little, *Zehe* toe. And also in proper names: *Irene, Peter*. And in foreign words: *Komet* comet, *Pafiete* pasty, *Planet* planet, &c.

The *grave* or *broad* sound of the *e* is either *long* or *short*. In the former case it resembles the *open è* of the French in *père*, or the English *ay* in *nay*; it approaches accordingly very near to the sound of the *ä*; care should be taken, however, not to pronounce it quite so broad as the latter: *leben* to live, *geben* to give, *Erde* earth. Most words with the simple *long e* are pronounced after this fashion.

The *short broad e* is pronounced almost the same as the *short ä*; nay, we may even say, *exactly* the same, as it is hardly possible, even for the finest ear, to distinguish between the two sounds: thus, for instance, *Welt* world, *schnell* quick, *denn* then, are pronounced as if they were written *Wält, schnäll, dänn*. The nearest English equivalent sound is accordingly, as already stated in the paragraph on the pronunciation of the *ä*, the *e* in *held, fell, rent*.

Note.—There is an etymological reason at the bottom of this broad *ä*-like pronunciation of the *e*; viz., most of the words in which it occurs should, from their origin or derivation, be spelt rather with *ä* than *e*.

The *e* in the unaccentuated prefixes and suffixes (*be, ent, em, er, ge, ver, zer, chen, de, e, el, en, er, ern, ner, sel,*) is scarcely audible, though not quite mute; it resembles the French *e* in the prefix *de* (in *demandeur* for instance), or the English *e* in the final syllable *er*, as in *water, better*. Placed after the *i*, the *e* is perfectly mute, and serves only to lengthen the former sound: *Dieb* thief, *Liebe* love (vide pronunciation of the *i*).

Ee and *eh* are invariably *long*. The former has the *acute* sound.

except in *Beere* berry, *Theer* tar, which are pronounced nearly as if they were written *Büre*, *Thür*. In words like *Be-elzebub*, *be-erdigen* to inter, *be-endigen* to finish, *be-engen* to confine, &c., where the two *e*'s belong to two distinct syllables, they are, of course, pronounced separately. The same in the plural of words terminating in the singular in the double *e* (*ee*), as *Armee* army, *See* sea; plural, *Arme-en*, *Se-en*, instead of *Armee-en*, *See-en*, because custom opposes the occurrence of three successive *e*'s. *Eh* has the *acute* sound where it is not followed by a consonant: *Ehe* matrimony, *stehen* to stand, *gehen* to go, *wehen* to blow, to wave, *drehen* to turn, *sehen* to see. And also in the contracted forms of words of this kind: *fehn*, *gehn*, *steht*, *geht*, &c. But where it is followed by a consonant it affects the *broad* or the *acute* sound, without any apparent reason for the one or the other except custom: thus, in *belehnen* to invest, *ehren* to honor, *hehr* exalted, *kehren* to turn, sweep, *lehn* to lend, *lehren* to teach, *mehr* more, *fehr* very, &c., it is *acute*; but *broad* in *begehren* to desire, *dehnen* to stretch, *entbehren* to want, *fehlen* to fail, *Kehle* throat, &c.

I (*ie—ih—ish*).

I is pronounced either *long* or *short*. In the former case it sounds like the English *ee* in *deer*: *Mine* mine, *mir* me, *dir* thee. In the latter, like the English *i* in *bit*, *hit*: *Biß* bite, *billig* equitable. *Ie*, *ih*, and *ieh* are invariably *long*, with the exception of *Wirth* host, in which the *ih* is *short*, and of *vierzehn* fourteen, *vierzig* forty, *Viertel* quarter, in which the *ie* is pronounced like a short *i*. In certain foreign words where the *ie* is unaccentuated, it is pronounced in two distinct syllables, the *i* having the *short*, the *e* the scarcely audible sound: thus, for instance, *Familie* family, *Lilie* lily, *Historie* history. In some female names, also (*Marie*, *Sophie*), the *ie* is pronounced in two syllables; in these names, however, the *i* is accentuated.

In foreign words, where the *ie* has the accent, it is pronounced as one syllable.

O (*oo—oh*).

O is pronounced either *long* or *short*. In the former case it sounds like the English *o* in *rose*, *bone*, *stone*: *Ton* sound, *Mond* moon, *Rose* rose. In the latter, like the English *o* in *lot*: *Gott* God, *soll* shall.

Oo and *oh* are invariably *long*.

In words like *Zo-ologie*, where the two *o*'s belong to two distinct syllables, they are, of course, pronounced separately.

Ö (*öh*).

Ö also has two sounds, the *long* and *short*. The former resembles the French *eu* in *feu*, *peureux*: *König* king, *schön* beautiful. The latter approaches near to the English *i* in *bird*, *firt*: *Zöllner* toll-keeper, *könnte* could.

Öh is invariably *long*.

U (*uh*).

U is pronounced either *long* or *short*. In the former case it

sounds like the English *oo* in *room* : *Fuß* foot, *Muß* leisure. In the latter, like *u* in *bull*, *full*, *bushel* : *muß* must, *Fluß* river.

Uh is invariably *long*. In *Thurm* tower, however, the *uh* is *short*, probably because it is followed by two consonants.

Ü (ü).

Ü also is either *long* or *short*. The *long ü* resembles the French *u* in *flute*, *salut* : *müßig* idle, *Zügel* bridle. The *short ü* approaches near to the sound of the *y* in *syrup* : *Gewürz* spices, *Dünger* dung.

Uh is invariably *long*.

Y.

This vowel, as already stated, is now entirely banished from German words.

In those Greek words which are familiarly used in German, the *y* has acquired the sound of *i* ; thus it is pronounced like the *long i*, in *Syrup*, *Afyl*, *Polyp*, *tyrisch* ; like the *short i*, in *System*, *Myrte*, *Idylle*. In Greek words less familiarly used it retains the original *ü* sound of the Greek *ypsilon* : e. g., *Hydra*, *Hyperbel*, *Myops*.

Note.—As a general rule, the vowels have the *long* sound when followed by a simple consonant.

Exceptions.—The vowel is pronounced *short* in the articles *das*, *des* ; in the pronouns *es*, *man*, *was* ; in the verb *bin*, first person singular of the present tense of *sein*, to be ; in the particles *ab*, *an*, *bis*, *him* (*im*), *in*, *mit*, *ob*, *um*, *von*, *weg* (*zum*) ; in the accented or semi-accentuated prefix *un* ; in the non-accentuated prefixes *be*, *ge*, *er*, *ver*, *zer* (in words where the letters *be*, *ge*, do not constitute a prefix, but form part of the radical syllable—e. g., in *beten*, *geben*, the vowel *e* has the *long* sound) ; in the semi-accentuated terminations *am*, *at*, *ich*, *isch*, *lich*, *rich* ; in the non-accentuated terminations *chen*, *de*, *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, *ig*, *sel*, *sig*, *tel*, *the*, *xig* ; in all syllables terminating in *x* ; and in many syllables ending in *ch* and *sch*.

The vowels have the *short* sound when followed in the same primitive syllable by a double consonant (*bb*, *dd*, *ff*, *gg*, *kk*, *ll*, *mm*, *nn*, *pp*, *rr*, *ss*, *tt*, *tz*).

Remark.—Of course, this rule does not apply to words in which the two consonants belong to different syllables : e. g., *vor-ragen*, *dar-reichen*, &c.

The *short* sound is given to the vowel also when followed by two or more simple consonants in succession, no matter whether belonging to the same or to different syllables, but provided always no vowel has been elided between them.

Exceptions.—The vowel is not unfrequently pronounced *long*, even before several successive consonants ; this is more particularly the case if the last consonant happens to be a *lingual* (*d*, *t*, *s*, *z*)—*Erde*, *Art*, *Krebs*, *Harz*.

II. DIPHTHONGS.

The pronunciation of the diphthongs has been given already in the alphabet.

III. SEMI-VOWELS.

J.—This letter sounds like the English *y* in *year* : *jeder* each, *Joch* yoke.

W.—This letter partakes somewhat of the nature of the English *w*, and is softer than the English *v* in *velvet* ; it approaches in its pronunciation nearer to the French *v* : *Welt* world, *wachsam* watchful.

IV. CONSONANTS.

B sounds like the English *b*—1, at the beginning of a syllable ; 2, when followed by a vowel in the same simple word ; 3, when followed by *d* or by a liquid ; 4, in words where the *e* is omitted after it by contraction—*Schreibart* style of writing, *Knäblein* infant boy, *Diebesgefindel* pack of thieves, *Hebamme* midwife, *Knoblauch* garlic, for *Diebesgefindel*, *Hebamme*, *Knübelein*, &c.; 5, when it is doubled—*Ebbe* ebb, *Krabbe* crab. At the end of a syllable, and in words where it immediately precedes a final consonant or consonants, with the exception of the liquids, it approaches the hard sound of *p*. The student should, however, endeavour, even in such words, to incline a little to the softer pronunciation of the English *b*, taking care, at the same time, to give the preceding vowel the long sound in words where no consonant intervenes between that vowel and the *b*.

C is no longer used in German words, *k* or *z*, as the case may be, being now universally substituted for it ; it has even been ousted from many foreign words which, from long use, have become naturalized in German.

In those foreign words in which it is still retained, it sounds like *k* before consonants, and before *a*, *o*, *u*—*College*, *Commissär*, *Secretär*, *Biscuit*, *Cabale*, &c.; and like *z* before *e*, *i*, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *y*—*Decimal*, *Cäfar*, *Centrum*, *civil*, *Cylinder*, &c.

In *Cöln* Cologne, the *c* is pronounced like *k*.

Ch.—With the exception of *Charfreitag* Good-Friday, and *Charwoche* Passion-Week, no German word commences with this letter ; in these two words it sounds like *k*. The same sound it has also in words of Greek origin, before *a*, *o*, and *r* : *Christ*, *Character*, *Chor*, although it would certainly be more correct to sound it in these and similar words as the palatic aspirate. Indeed, in *Achat* agate, and *Echo*, most people give it the latter sound in preference to the hard *k* sound. *Kur* election, and *Kurfürst* prince elector, are now universally written with *k* instead of *ch*.

In the middle or at the end of German words the *ch* has a twofold sound, depending upon the nature of the letter which happens to precede it. After *a*, *o*, and *u*, it partakes more of the nature of a guttural than a palatic, and sounds like a species of strongly aspirated *k*, somewhat after the fashion of *ch* in the Scotch word *Loch*, or *gh* in the Irish word *Lough* : *Joch* yoke, *lachen* to laugh, *Tuch* cloth. After *ä*, *e*, *i*, *ö*, *ü*, or consonants, it sounds almost like a pure palatic, and is identical in pronunciation with the Spanish *x* or *j*. It is, of course, altogether impossible to render the exact sound of this palatic by any combination of English letters or sounds ; yet, I think, the student may form at least some approximate idea of it, by trying to pronounce the initial *y* in *year* with a very strong and decided aspiration : *ich* I, *recht* right, *möchte* might, *lächerlich* ridiculous, *horch* hark, *mancher* many-a-one, &c.

In words borrowed from foreign languages, the *ch* retains its respective native sound.

Ch followed by *f* or *s* in the same primitive syllable, sounds like *k* : *Achse*, *wachsen* to grow, *Wachs*, *Achsel* ; but where the *f* belong

etymologically to the next syllable, or where an *e* has been elided before the *s*, the *ch* retains its proper sound: *wach-sam* watchful, *Nach-sicht* indulgence, forbearance, *Buchs* for *Buches*, gen. of *Buch* book, *brach's* for *brach es* broke it.

D at the end of a syllable is sounded almost as hard as *t*, except in words where an *e* or *i*, originally intervening between the *d* and the next following consonant, has been thrown out by contraction; in such words, and in all other positions, it has the soft sound of the English *d*. Thus, in *Hand*, *Hund* dog, *Bad* bath, *Advocat* lawyer, the final *d* sounds hard; but soft in *Tadler* censurer, critic, *Adler* eagle, &c., words which have been formed by elision and contraction from *Tadeler*, *Adeler* or *Adelaar*, &c.

The soft pronunciation should equally be given to *d* followed by the terminations *ling* and *lein*: *Fremdling* stranger, *Mündlein* little mouth, &c.

The double *d* (*dd*) also is pronounced soft; but *dt* is sounded hard, and pronounced like a simple *t*.

F, *v*, and *ph* are pronounced like the English *f* in *find*, *full*, *France*.

To give the *f* between two vowels the sound of the English *v* is decidedly incorrect: thus, *Briefe* letters, for instance, must be pronounced *bree-fe*, not *bree-ve*, as some grammarians will have it.

In the following few words, in which the *v* stands in the middle or at the end—*brav* brave, *Frevel* crime, *Larve* mask, *Malve* mallow, *Nerve*, *Olive*, *Pulver* powder, *Sklave* slave—this letter is pronounced a little softer, and more like the English *v*.

In foreign words the *v* is pronounced like the English *v*: *Advocat*, *Bravour*, *Caravane*, *Vocabel*, *Vocation*, *Violine*, &c. But in the foreign terminations *av* and *iv*, it sounds like *f*: *Archiv*, *Imperativ*, *Nominativ*, *positiv*, &c.

In words written with *pf* both letters are distinctly sounded.

G before *a*, *o*, *u*, and consonants, is pronounced like the English *g* in *grog*; before *e*, *i*, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, it ought to be sounded a little softer, somewhat like the English *g* in *give*; the latter pronunciation should be given to it also at the end of a syllable or word. In the termination *ig*, however, it must be confessed, it would be more pleasant to the ear to change the sound of the final *g* to something between the latter and the palatic aspirate *ch*: *König* king, *wenig* little.

In words taken from the French the *g* retains the same sound which it has in French: *Genie*, *Gigot*, &c.

The nasal palatic *ng* is pronounced the same as in English: *Gang* walk, *eng* narrow, *springen* to spring, to leap. But in words where the *n* and *g* belong etymologically to two distinct syllables, both letters retain their proper sound: *An-ge-sicht* face, *ein-gehen* to enter, to cease, to contract.

G before *n* is distinctly pronounced in German. Care must be taken to avoid the slightest nasal twang in the pronunciation of *gn*. The insertion of a species of mute *e* has been recommended by some grammarians to facilitate the pronunciation of this compound sound to the English student; others object to this practice. I, for my own part, think it may be resorted to with advantage by

student, provided always he keep in mind that the insertion of this phonetic *e* is only imaginary, not real.

H at the beginning of a word or syllable is invariably aspirated in German, and sounded accordingly like the English *h* in *have*, *helmet*, *hero*: *Hand*, *halb* half. Before *l*, *m*, *n*, *o*, and at the end of a word or syllable, it is perfectly mute, no matter whether it stands as an organic letter or serves simply as a lengthening sign: *Floh* flea, *nah* nigh, *near*, *Kuh* cow, *Jahr* year, *lahm* lame.

In words where the *h* is drawn over, from the radical syllable of which it constitutes the final letter, to the non-accentuated termination that follows, the aspiration is only very feeble: *Mühe* labour, trouble, *sehen* to see, *gehen* to go, *geschehen* to happen, &c.

K is pronounced the same as the English *k*.

K before *n* is never mute in German, as it is in English, but is always distinctly sounded.

L, *m*, *n*, *p*, are pronounced the same as in English.

Q occurs only in few German words; it is invariably followed by *u*. The compound sound resulting from the conjunction of these two letters is more closely and correctly represented in English by *ku* than by *qu*: thus, *Quelle* source is pronounced *Kvulle*.

The letter *r* is always pronounced very distinctly and with a strong vibration of the tongue.

f before vowels is pronounced like the English *s* in *desire*, or like the English *s* in *zeal*: *sehen* to see, *fagen* to say, *reisen* to travel, *blasen* to blow. But where the *f* at the beginning of a word or syllable is followed by either *p* or *t*, the proper pronunciation lies between the soft sound and the hissing sound of the English *sh*, inclining, however, rather more to the former than to the latter: *Stuhl* chair, *Stand* station, *Stunde* hour.

st in the middle or at the end of a word is pronounced like the English *st* in *first*, *rest*: *Last* burthen, *raften* to rest, *Lift* craft, *cunning*.

The final *s* is pronounced like the final *s* in the English words *thus*, *this*, *yes*: *Haus*, *Glas*, *Eis*.

f, *ff*, and *f* have a still sharper and more ringing sound than the final *s*; their pronunciation is almost identical with that of the English *ss* in *fuss*: *Guf* cast, *Gruf* salutation, *Fuf* foot, *lassen* to leave, to let, *fließen* to flow.

sch is pronounced like the English *sh*.

T has the same sound as in English. In the middle of foreign words taken from the Latin, *t* before *i*, followed by another vowel, is pronounced like *ts*: *Auction*, *Gratiae*, *Nation*, *Motion*, *Patient*. But if the *t* is preceded by *f*, it retains its proper sound: *Baftion*, *Queftion*.

X, as already stated, is pronounced 'like *ts*.

Z, like *ts*.

ACCENTUATION.

The only accent of which we have to speak here is the *syllabic*; the laws of the accentuation of words and of sentences, and the rhetoric accent, are subjects which properly belong to the domain of a General or Universal Grammar.

The German language recognises two syllabic accents, viz., the *full* accent, which we will mark ' , and the *demi* or half accent, which we will mark ` ; syllables which have neither of the two are called non-accentuated (*tonlos*, literally *accentless*).

The syllabic accentuation or intonation of the German language is strictly logical, the full accent being almost invariably placed in dissyllabic and polysyllabic simple words, on the principal or radical syllable: *verwünschen*, *Betrübniß*, *ordentlich*, *entërben*, *Gebürt*, *gëbet* give, *Gëbbet* prayer, *erblich* hereditary, *sie erblich* she grew pale, she died.

Exceptions.—*Lebëndig* alive, instead of *lebendig*; *leibhäftig* bodily, corporal; and *wahrhäftig* veracious, truly, verily, instead of *leibhäftig*, *währhäftig*. Words with the accentuated prefix *ant*, as *A'ntwort* answer, *A'ntlitz* face, countenance, instead of *Antwort*, *Antlitz*. Words with the accentuated termination *ei*, as *Spielerei* child's play, *Türkei*, instead of *Spielerei*, *Türkei*.

A few words with the prefix *erz*; viz., *Erzbischof*, *Erzengel*, *Erzstift*, *Erzvater*. Separable compound verbs with the prefix *miß*, e. g., *mißtönen*, *mißarten*, &c. Substantives and adjectives with the prefix *miß*, e. g., *Mißtrauen*, *mißtrauisch*, *Mißfallen*, *mißfällig*, &c. Substantives, adjectives (not formed directly from verbal roots), and adverbs with the prefix *un*, e. g., *Un'sinn*, *unschuldig*, *unlängst*, *unglücklich*, and also *undankbar*, *unsichtbar*, because they are formed more immediately from the substantives *Dank*, *Sicht*, than from the verbs *danken*, *sehen*. And most words with the prefix *ur*, e. g., *Ursprung*, *Ur'sache*, *uralt*, *Urtheil*.

In compound words the full accent is placed on the *determinative* member of the compound, which in compound substantives, adjectives, and verbs usually *precedes*, in compound particles usually stands after, the root or fundamental member: *Kirchhof*, *Hausthür*, *Eingang*, *Haúsvater*, *Väterhaus*, *gróßmüthig*, *réchtfertigen*, *voraus*, *bergán*, *hinúnter*, *feldeín*.

The *separable* compound verbs with prepositions place the full accent on the preposition: *aufsteigen* to ascend, *vorschlagen* to propose, *ausgeben* to expend, &c. But the *inseparable* compounds of verbs with prepositions place the full accent on the root of the verb: *hinterbringen*, *vollénden*, *widerspréchen*, *offenbáren*. Some compound verbs are *separable* in one, *inseparable* in another signification, and place the accent accordingly; thus, the inseparable verb *umgehen* to avoid, to go round, has the full accent on the radical syllable of the verb; the separable, *umgehen* to revolve, to circulate, to have intercourse with, to design, places it on the preposition. The same rule applies to *übersétzen* to translate, and *überfétzen* to pass over, to convey over; *durchreisen* to travel all over a country, and *dúrchreisen* to pass through; *überlégen* to reflect upon, to consider, and *überlegen* to lay over or upon a thing; *unterhálden* to entertain, and *unterhalten*.

to hold under, &c. The substantives and adjectives derived from such verbs follow generally the same rule of intonation: e. g., *Offenbarung* revelation, *Unterhaltung* entertainment, conversation, *umgänglich* sociable, *anfänglich* incipient, *Vorzug* preference. In some other derivatives, however, the accent is shifted: thus, e. g., *Widerspruch*, *Umfang*, *U'nterhalt*, &c., from *widersprechen*, *umfängen*, *unterhalten*; *ausdrücklich*, *ausführlich*, *vorzüglich*, &c., from *ausdrücken*, *ausführen*, *vörziehen*.

Exceptions.—Some compound substantives and adjectives intonate exceptionally the *fundamental* word, in accordance with the established and prevailing usage and practice of the language: e. g., *Jahrhundert*, *Südöst*, *Nordwest*, *Neuholland*, *Frohnleischnam*, *leibeißen*, *handgreiflich*, *vollkommen*, *willkommen* (but the substantive *Willkommen* and the verb *bewillkommen* place the accent on the determinative member of the compound, in accordance with the general rule). In titular epithets also, particularly in those formed with the word *all*, the accent is generally placed on the fundamental member of the compound: e. g., *hochsätlig*, *allwissend*, *allwältend*, *allweise*, *allgütig*. Some of this class, however, place the accent regularly: e. g., *höchherzig*, *größmütig*, *ältligig*, *Äl'macht*. The word *nothwendig* is intonated *nothwéndig* by some; by others regularly, *nóthwendig*.

Certain compound particles formed with *da* and *wo* intonate occasionally the first syllable, by way of emphasising: e. g., *dafür*, *dárum*, *wárum*. *Einmal*, with the accent on the first syllable, means once; *einmál*, with the accent on the last syllable, means at one time, or once upon a time: *álso*, with the accent on the first syllable, means therefore; *aló*, with the accent on the last syllable, means so, in such a manner.

The compound adverbs formed with *all*, *viel*, *voll*, and *wohl*, place the accent upon the fundamental word, which occupies in them the last place: e. g., *allhier*, *allein*, *vielleicht*, *vielmehr*, *vollauf*, *wohlan*, *wohlauf*, &c.

Note.—In complex compounds, consisting of three or more words, the full accent is usually placed on *that* syllable which contains the most important determinative idea, and the intonation of the other syllables is graduated according to their respective value and significance. Complex compounds contain, invariably, only two principal constituents, of which either the one or the other, or both, are compound words. If the first member of a complex compound happens to be a compound word, the second member a simple word, the full accent (˘) is placed on the determinative, a slender half-accent (˙) on the fundamental word of the first, and a somewhat more emphatic half-accent (˘) on the last member, which constitutes the root of the whole compound: e. g., *Kaufmanns'ohn*, *Fä'snacht'spiel*, &c. But if the first member is a simple word, and the last a compound one, the full accent is placed on the first member (the determinative of the whole compound), whilst a slender half-accent is given to the fundamental word, and a more emphatic half-accent to the determinative of the second member: e. g., *Kir'schbráuntwein*, *Kriegs'chauplätz*, *Tödesánblick*, &c. Many complex compounds of the latter class deviate, however, from this rule, upon phonetic grounds, and give the full accent to the determinative of the second member, and a strong half-accent only to the first member: e. g., *Pálm'ónntag*, *Chárfreitag*, *Schló'shauptmánn* &c.

The above rules will suffice also to guide the student to a correct

intonation of complex compounds of four or more words, such as *Brändversicherungsanstalt*, *Mittagsmahlzeit*, &c.

The *half* or *demi-accent* is given to—1, all radical syllables forming the whole or part of the fundamental member of a compound word (see the preceding rules); 2, the terminations *am*, *and*, *ath*, *at*, *bar*, *dar*, *haft*, *heit*, *icht*, *inn*, *keit*, *lei*, *lein*, *lich*, *ling*, *lings*, *niß*, *sal*, *sam*, *schaft*, *thum*, *ung*, *uth*; 3, the prefix *un* before participles, and before adjectives terminating in *bar*, *lich*, *sam*, if they are derived from verbs—e. g., *unbelöhnt*, *untrennbar*, *unendlich*, *unduldsam*, &c.; 4, the prefix *miß*, when inseparably combined with the verb—e. g., *mißlingen*, &c.; 5, the prefix *erz* in titles—e. g., *Erztruchseß*; and in words where it is used by way of emphasis—e. g., *Erzdieb*, *archthief*, *erzdumm* *archstupid*, &c.; 6, the prefix *ur* in a few adjectives—e. g., *ursprünglich*.

Unaccentuated or accentless are—1, all syllables serving for the inflection of declension, conjugation, comparison, &c., such as *e*, *em*, *en*, *end*, *ene*, *er*, *ern*, *es*, *est*, *et*, *te*, *ste*; 2, the prefixes *be*, *ge*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ver*, *zer*; 3, the terminations *chen*, *de*, *e*, *el*, *eln*, *en*, *end*, *er*, *ern*, *ig*, *sel*, *sig*, *tel*, *the*, *zig*.

Note.—In the word *Elend* misery, the syllable *end*, which in that word has the half-accent, is not a termination, but a radical syllable, the word being originally formed from *eli-lenti*, *ellende*, which means of another land, of a foreign land.

Remark.—The foregoing rules on syllabic accentuation apply only to German words. Foreign words, that have been received in the German language, either follow the laws of accentuation of the language from which they are taken, or some uncertain and capricious rules dictated by the prevailing usage, and which it would lead us too far here to expatiate upon. Only this I think it useful to say, that some words of true German origin, but with a foreign termination, place the accent, according to the analogy of similarly ending foreign words, upon the termination, and leave the radical or principal syllable unaccentuated: thus, *Kompán* companion is accentuated on the last syllable, like the foreign word *Altán*; *Schwadrón*, like *Perfón*; *Soldát*, like *Senát*; *Blumíst*, like *Artíst*; *Morást*, like *Phantást*; *Glasár*, like *Frifár*; *Stelláge*, like *Etáge*; *possierlich*, like *manierlich*, &c.

This rule applies more particularly to German verbs with the foreign termination *iren*: thus, for instance, *halbíren*, *buchstábíren*, *haufíren*, *schattíren* are accentuated like the foreign verbs *studíren*, *marfchíren*, &c.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

The safest and surest guide to the orthography of the German language is to be found in the acquisition of a correct pronunciation and proper intonation. It is for this reason that I have expatiated somewhat more largely on the subjects of the preceding chapter than the limits of an elementary work like the present would see to warrant. We can the more readily now dispense here with elaborate treatise on orthography, and may, without prejudi-

the student, confine ourselves simply to a few general rules and remarks.

The first and principal rule is, to write every word in strict accordance with its correct pronunciation; no letter more, no letter less. This principle, though of very general application, is subject, nevertheless, to some necessary modifications, from the circumstance, that the German language often makes use of several distinct letters to produce sounds almost or perfectly identical; thus, pronunciation would leave us very uncertain as to the correct way of spelling and writing words, for instance, in which the sound of the broad *e*, or of the *i*, the *f*, the *x*, &c., is heard. In such cases, the correct way of spelling a word may be learned by a reference to its proximate derivation. This, however, presupposes already a somewhat more intimate acquaintance with the language; which remark applies, of course, more strongly still to cases in which both pronunciation and reference to derivation failing, the prevailing custom or practice of the language has to be appealed to in the last instance.

Foreign words (with the exception of those that have, to use a familiar phrase, received the right of citizenship in German) ought invariably to retain their original and native spelling, provided always this spelling be not wholly incompatible with the received laws and rules of German pronunciation, as is the case with the letter *c* in certain positions. The rule here is, that where this letter comes to stand at the end of the word, or before the German terminations *el*, *en*, *er*, it is changed to *k* or to *z*, according as the correct pronunciation of the word may happen to require. Thus, for instance, we write *Republik*, *Orakel*, *Artikel*, *Diodez*, *Commerz-Collegium*, and not *Republic*, *Oracel*, *Articel*, *Duodec*, *Commerc-Collegium*; but we write *Republicaner*, *Articulirt*, *Commercium*, *Duodecimal-System*, &c., since no possible doubt or mistake could occur in the pronunciation of these words.

As regards *nouns proper*, they are, of course, spelt respectively after their own fashion, and without regard to orthographic rules.

ON THE USE OF CAPITAL LETTERS.

That greatest of all grammarians, Jacob Grimm, and many other eminent authors and grammarians (J. H. Vof, Schubert, Benecke, Lachmann, Heyse, &c.), have pronounced themselves more or less strongly and decidedly against the use, or rather the *abuse*, of capital letters in the German orthography. My humble opinion coincides entirely with that of these distinguished philologists. But so sweeping an innovation as that proposed by some of them, and more particularly by Grimm, viz., the total expulsion of capital initials except at the commencement of a sentence and in proper names, cannot well be introduced into a practical grammar of the German language, *though upon the very highest authority*, and however so desirable *in other respects*, so long as it has not received the sanction of, at *all events*, a respectable minority of the educated classes of the *nation*. We must, therefore, here adhere to the rules, on the use of *capital initials*, as established by long prevailing practice.

The following are the principal rules on this subject:—

1. A capital initial is required at the commencement of a sentence, and thus invariably after a full stop; but after a note of interrogation or exclamation only when these signs stand really at the end of a complete sentence: e. g., *Haben Sie meinen Hut? Ja, ich habe ihn—* Have you my hat? Yes, I have it. *Seltfame Verblendung! Er glaubt an das Wort eines Fürsten!*—Strange infatuation! He believes in the word of a prince! But when these signs stand in the middle of a sentence, no capital initial ought to be used after them, except there be some other reason for it: e. g., *Daß die Wahrheit endlich siegen muß, ist gewiß; aber wann? das ist eine andere Frage*—That truth must prevail at last, is certain; but when? is quite another question. *Welche sonderbare Frage! dachte ich*—What a strange question! thought I.

A semicolon is never followed by a capital initial, nor is a colon except in the case of a literal quotation of one's own or another person's words: e. g., *Er fragte mich: "Wollen Sie mein Anerbieten annehmen?" Ich antwortete: "Nein, ich muß es ablehnen."* He asked me: "Will you accept my offer?" I replied: "No, I must decline it."

In verses, every new line begins with a capital letter.

2. All nouns substantive, and other nouns and particles when employed in the capacity of substantives, are written with capital initials: e. g., *Frieden, Haus, Tinte, &c.; das Grün, das Blau, das Große, das Edle, der Gute, die Schöne, ein Blinder. Die Pflicht der Reichen ist, Armen zu helfen*—It is the duty of the rich to assist the poor. *Friedrich der Große, &c.; das Gehen, das Springen, &c.; Er kann sich im Essen und Trinken nicht mäßigen, &c.; das Mein, das Dein, sein liebes Ich, das Etwas und das Nichts, &c.; das Für und das Wider einer Sache* the pro and con of a matter, &c.; *das Wenn und das Aber, das Ja und das Nein, &c.; das Ach und O! &c.; ein trauriges Lebewohl, a sad farewell; ein X für ein U machen, to mislead and deceive.*

Remark.—When a seemingly independent adjective refers to a substantive in a preceding or subsequent part of the sentence, the adjective is written with a small initial: e. g., *Er ist ein großer Mann, ich glaube auch ein guter* He is a great man, and I believe a good one too; *Er ist ein gelehrter, ich glaube sogar weiser Mann* He is a learned, nay, I believe, even a wise man.

In adverbial locutions formed of prepositions with adjectives, the latter are spelt equally with small initials: e. g., *aufs neue* anew, *in kurzem* shortly, *am besten* the best way, in the best manner, &c. The prevailing practice of the language excepts from this rule the following adverbial locutions:—*im Ganzen* on the whole, *im Allgemeinen* in general, *im Einzelnen* singly, individually, *im Besonderen* especially, particularly, separately. In the word *insbesondere* particularly, the preposition and adjective are absolutely joined together, and the adjective, is, therefore, of course, written with a small initial.

3. The pronouns of address, in letters, memorials, &c., are written with capital initials: *Du, Dir, Dich, Deiner, Sie, Ihr, Euch, U Ihrer Ihnen, Eurs*; and the word *Sich*, where it refers to *Sie*,

Sie haben Sich über diesen Punkt noch nicht ausgesprochen You have not yet explained yourself on this point. The pronouns *er* he, and *sie* she, are also occasionally still used as pronouns of address, when they ought always to be written with capital initials.

The pronoun of address most in use in German is *Sie*, which stands for the English *you*.

Other words or terms of address are also usually written with capital initials: e. g., *Eure* (or abbreviated *Ew.*) *Königliche Hoheit* Your Royal Highness, *Ew. Herzogliche Durchlaucht* Your Serene Highness, *Ew. Excellenz*, &c. The same way, *Ew. Wohlgeboren*, *Ew. Hochwohlgeboren*, *Wohlgeborne*, *Hochzuehrender Herr*, &c., terms of a most ridiculous and overstrained politeness, which might most advantageously be dispensed with altogether. Capital initials are also used when speaking of high personages in the third person: *e. g., *Seine* (abbreviated *Se.*) *Königliche Hoheit*, *Seine Excellenz*, &c.

Note.—In all cases where the titular adjectives *kaiserlich*, *königlich*, *herzoglich*, *fürstlich*, &c., are used in a general sense, and not in immediate connection with persons, they are written with small initials: e. g., *die kaiserliche Würde* the imperial dignity, *das königliche Schloß* the royal palace, *ein fürstliches Geschenk* a princely gift, &c.

4. Adjectives derived from the names of persons, towns, and villages, are written with capital initials: e. g., *die Kantische Philosophie*, *Berliner Blau*, *ein Frankfurter Bürger*, *Hallische Stärke*, *die Grmmische Grammatik*, &c. But adjectives derived from the names of countries are written with small initials: e. g., *die europäischen Nationen*, *die deutsche Sprache*, *westphälische Schinken*, &c.

5. The indefinite personal pronouns, *Jemand* somebody, *Niemand* nobody, *Jedermann* everybody, are written with capital initials; and so are the determinative and demonstrative pronouns *Dieser*, *Jener*, *Der*, *Derjenige*, *Derfelbe*; and the indefinite numerals *Alle*, *Einige*, *Andere*, *Mancher*, *Viele*, *Keiner*, &c., when used *pronominally*, and without any substantive designating the persons to which they refer, either preceding or following them.

The possessive pronouns, *der* (*die*, *das*), *meinige*, *deinige*, *seinige*, *ihrige*, *unfrige*, *eurige*, or *meine*, *deine*, *seine*, *ihre*, *unsre*, *eure*, take the capital initial in the plural when referring to persons, and in the singular of the neuter when used generally and without reference to any particular object: e. g., *Die Meinigen lassen die Deinigen grüßen* my family's compliments to yours; *Er hat das Seinige gethan*. But, *ist dies mein Buch*, oder *das seinige*? because in this sentence *seinige* refers to *Buch*.

Note A.—Substantives, when used in the capacity of adverbs or prepositions, lose the privilege of capital initials: e. g., *theils* partly, *flugs* instantly, *anfangs* at first, *ungefähr* about, *laut*, *kraft*, *vermöge*, *zufolge*, according to, by virtue of, in consequence of, *statt* instead of, *willen* on account of, &c. This rule applies also to the following sentences:—*Jemand zum besten haben*, to mock, to deride, to hoax a person; *etwas preis geben* to abandon, to deliver up at discretion; *zu se halten* to excuse, *zuwege bringen* to effect, to bring about.

Exceptions.—The prevailing practice of the language demands capital initials in certain adverbs of time, represented by the genitive cases of the corresponding substantives: e. g., *Morgens* in the morning, *Abends* in the evening, *Nachts* at night, *Mittags* at noon, *Nachmittags* in the afternoon, &c. There are also many sentences in which the substantive, though used adverbially, yet retains the capital initial: e. g., *Acht geben* to pay attention, *in Acht nehmen* to keep carefully, to perceive, *Dank sagen* to return thanks (the inseparable compound verb *dank sagen*, which has the same meaning, is, as verb, of course, written with a small initial); *zu Grunde gehen*, *zu Hülfe kommen*, *im Stande sein*, *zu Stande bringen*, *zu Werke gehen*, *zur Rede stellen*, *Trotz bieten*, *Statt finden*, *ich bin Willen's*: the latter word, however, is frequently written with a small initial.

Note B.—Certain words (*Recht, Unrecht, Schuld, Angst, Feind, Leid, Noth, Weh, Werth, &c.*) are used in the same form as substantives at one time, and as adjectives at another. In the former acceptation, they are written with capitals; in the latter, with small initials: e. g., *Habe ich Recht, oder Unrecht? Es ist mir recht. Du hast das unrecht verstanden, &c.*

ON THE DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES AT THE ENDS OF LINES.

In the English language, the division of a word at the end of a line is determined solely according to the etymology of the word; whereas in German, it is determined mostly by the pronunciation of the word. The following general rules will suffice to guide the student to a correct syllabic partition in almost every case that can offer:—

1. Monosyllabic words are not susceptible of division.

2. Nor are diphthongs.

3. A consonant standing between two vowels in dissyllabic or polysyllabic words, is assigned to the second of the two syllables between which the separation takes place: e. g., *Le-ben*.

4. Of two consonants, the first is assigned to the first, the second to the second syllable: e. g., *Gar-ten*. The same rule applies to double consonants: e. g., *es-sen, Män-ner*.

Remark.—The compound consonants *ch, ck, ph, pf, sch, sp, st, s, th*, and *tz*, are not susceptible of division. When followed by a consonant, they are assigned to the first syllable; when followed by a vowel, to the second: e. g., *men-sch-lich, Men-schen, rath-lich, ra-then*. There are, however, some exceptions from this rule, as regards the letters *pf* and *sp* (*sp*), which are divided if the pronunciation absolutely demands it: e. g., *Ap-fel, Trop-fen, Knos-pe* (but *Knösp-chen, Wes-pe, lis-peln*).

5. Where a vowel has been elided between two consonants, the separation is effected at the place of elision: e. g., *eif-rig, ad-lig, Ob-ri-gkeit, wir spei-f'-ten* or *speis-ten*, not *spei-sten*.

6. In compound words, and in derivatives by means of prefixes, the partition is effected according to the etymology of the word, and without regard to the pronunciation: e. g., *beob-achten, hier-in, voll-enden, emp-finden*, although the pronunciation of these words

beo-bachten, his-rin, vol-lenden, em-pfinden. In the same way we divide correctly, *Aug-apfel, Erb-recht, hin-aus, dar-um, war-um, ent-erben, er-innern, vor-aus.*

The same rule applies to derivatives formed by means of terminations commencing with a consonant (*bar, chen, de, haft, heit, keit, lei, lein, lich, ling, ner, niß, rich, sal, sam, schaft, sel, ßig, thum, zig*): e. g., *Rös-chen, Häus-chen, Selig-keit, Neu-ling, Hinder-niß, &c.*

But terminations commencing with a vowel (*and, at, ath, e, ei, el, en, er, ern, ich, icht, ig, ing, inn, isch, ung, uth,*) assume to themselves the final consonant of the preceding syllable: e. g., *Hei-land, Hei-math, Win-del, Dich-te-rinn, &c.*

7. The division of foreign words into syllables is also determined by the pronunciation, in preference to the etymological formation or derivation. Thus, we divide, for instance, *E-van-ge-li-um, Ka-to-chis-mus, Mo-narch, Mi-san-throp,* and not, as would be etymologically correct, *Ev-angelium, Kat-echismus, Mon-arch, Mis-anthrop.* In the same way we divide *Ac-ci-se, Ac-ti-on, Auc-ti-on, Af-fec-ten, trans-spi-ri-ren, Cas-ca-de, Dis-cant, dis-cret.* However, where *sc* has the sound of *sz*, it is usually assigned entire to the second syllable: e. g., *a-scen-di-ren, De-scen-den-ten, Di-scip-lin, &c.*

In words beginning with *asp, esp, desp, resp*, the *sp* is also drawn entire to the next syllable: e. g., *A-spec-ten, cor-re-spon-di-ren, E-sprit, &c.* We separate also *in-ter-ef-sant* and *In-ter-ef-sen-ten*, and not *in-te-ref-sant, &c.*

X, followed by a vowel, is carried over to the next syllable: e. g., *A-xiom, E-xem-pel* (except in the Latin prefix *ex*, which remains invariably undivided: e. g., *Ex-or-di-um, ex-act, Ex-cel-lenz*).

In French words with *gn*, these two letters are assigned undivided to the next syllable: e. g., *Mi-gnon, Com-pa-gnon.* In doubtful cases, the best way is to avoid the partition altogether.

ON PUNCTUATION.

The punctuation in German differs only slightly from the English, the dissimilarities relating, moreover, almost exclusively to the use of the comma.

The principal differences are as follow:—

1. The Germans use a comma invariably before a relative pronoun or adverb, and also before most conjunctions, that is, of course, if the nature of the connection or copulation of the sentence does not require the more potent semicolon or full stop. A comma is invariably put in German before the conjunction *oder* or, when used as a *disjunctive*, to disconnect two opposite or, at all events, dissimilar ideas: e. g., *Ist er todt, oder lebendig?*—Is he dead or alive? *Er verlangte von mir das Geld, oder seine Arbeit zurück*—He demanded (from me) his money, or to give him back his work (his money, or his work back). But where the *oder* serves to connect words of similar or kindred import, or different terms simply for one and the same thing, the comma is omitted: e. g., *In diesem oder jenem Falle*

in this or that case, *Er ist gestern oder heute angekommen*, he arrived yesterday or to-day, *Der Frühling des Lebens oder die Kindheit*, the spring of life or childhood.

2. A comma is much more rarely put in German before the conjunction *und* and, than it is in English. The principal cases requiring the use of a comma before this conjunction, are—

a. Where the *und* serves to connect sentences each complete in itself: e. g., *Ich werde morgen abreisen, und Ihr könnt mir in einigen Tagen nachkommen* I shall leave to-morrow, and you may follow me in a few days.

b. Where it serves to connect sentences having the same attribute or the same complement in common, the said attribute or complement being contained entire in the first sentence: e. g., *Der Schwache fürchtet sich vor dem Starken, und der Betrogene vor dem Betrüger* the weak dreads the strong, and the deceived the deceiver. But where the whole or part of the common attribute or complement is placed in one of the succeeding sentences, the comma is omitted before the connecting *und*: e. g., *Er sagte mir, daß seine Söhne gestern und seine Töchter heute das Museum besucht haben* he told me that his sons visited the Museum yesterday, and (that) his daughters (visited it) to-day; *Es besahen gestern die Lehrer und heute die Schüler unsern Garten* the teachers viewed our garden yesterday, and the pupils (viewed it) to-day.

Remark.—If the two sentences connected by the conjunction *und* stand to one another in the relation of antithesis, the insertion of a comma before the conjunction is absolutely required, the preceding rule to the contrary notwithstanding: e. g.,

“O daß Sie von so ferner Zeit,
Und nicht von morgen, nicht von heute sprechen !”

The conjunction *und* is never preceded by a comma when it serves to connect co-ordinate secondary or complemental sentences dependent upon one and the same principal proposition: e. g., *Während ich schrieb und meine Brüder lasen, ging er in der Stube auf und ab* Whilst I was writing, and my brothers were reading, he walked up and down the room.

c. A comma is required before *und* in all cases where its omission might lead to ambiguity. Thus, for instance, in the following sentence:—*Im Innern des Waldes befanden sich Waffenmagazine, Vorrathshäuser, und Geräthe zum Fischfang* In the interior of the wood were magazines of arms, storehouses, and implements for fishing—the omission of the comma would leave it doubtful whether the storehouses might not be meant as intended to receive the produce of the fishing operations.

A comma is also put where the *und* serves to connect co-ordinate sentences, or members of a sentence, separated in groups: e. g.,

*Und Tag und Nacht, und Korn und Wein und Freuden
Empfangen wir aus deiner Hand.*

Und drinnen waltet
 Die stüchtige Hausfrau,
 Die Mutter der Kinder,
 Und herrschet weise
 Im häuslichen Kreise,
 Und lehret die Mädchen
 Und wehret den Knaben,
 Und reget ohn' Ende
 Die fleißigen Hände,
 Und sammelt im reinlich geglätteten Schrein
 Die schimmernde Wolle, den schneeigen Lein, &c.

3. Secondary or complemental sentences, represented by a verb in the infinitive mood, with, and in some instances even without, the preposition *zu* to, preceding it, are separated by a comma from the principal sentence which governs them: e. g., *Ist's redlich, so zu handeln?* Is it honest to act thus? *Es ist wohl angenehm, sich mit sich selbst beschäftigen, wenn es nur so nützlich wäre.*

However, where some important part of the dependent sentence happens to be placed in the principal proposition preceding, no comma is admissible: e. g., *Das wag' ich nicht dem Lord zu sagen* (but *Ich wage nicht, das dem Lord zu sagen*); *Erstaunenswerthe Dinge hoffte man auf dieser Kriegesbühne zu erleben* (but *Man hoffte, erstaunenswerthe Dinge &c.*)

In cases where the infinitive mood does not constitute a separate sentence, but forms simply a complemental part of the principal sentence, no comma is permitted to intervene: e. g., *Sie begann zu sprechen* she commenced to speak, *Ich habe Lust zu verreisen.*—*Es ist Zeit zu gehen.*—*Er war bereit zu sterben.*—*Strebe Deine Pflicht zu thun.*

A comma is required, however, even in cases like the preceding, if the complement, either from its greater compass, or from the fact of a relation existing between it and a demonstrative adverb or pronoun, assumes the character of a secondary sentence: e. g., *Strebe danach, stets Deine Pflicht zu thun*; "*Wer wagt's, sie eine Schuldige zu nennen?*" "*Der Stein hatte die geheime Kraft, vor Gott und Menschen angenehm zu machen.*"

4. The English frequently confine adverbs, conjunctions, and incidental sentences governed by prepositions, between commas. German orthography repudiates this practice altogether.

CHAPTER I.

THE ARTICLE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

I. DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

Singular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	
Nominative	<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	the
Genitive	<i>des</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>des</i>	of the
Dative	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	to the
Accusative	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	the

Plural.

FOR THE THREE GENDERS.

Nom.	<i>die</i>	the
Gen.	<i>der</i>	of the
Dat.	<i>den</i>	to the
Acc.	<i>die</i>	the

II. DECLENSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

Singular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	
Nom.	<i>ein</i>	<i>eine</i>	<i>ein</i>	a
Gen.	<i>eines</i>	<i>einer</i>	<i>eines</i>	of a
Dat.	<i>einem</i>	<i>einer</i>	<i>einem</i>	to a
Acc.	<i>einen</i>	<i>eine</i>	<i>ein</i>	a

The indefinite article has, of course, no plural; the plural number of the substantive, without the article, may be considered to correspond to the singular with the indefinite article.

Note.—The definite article must not be confounded with the pronoun *der*, *die*, *das*; nor the indefinite with the numeral adjective or indefinite pronoun *einer*, *eine*, *eines*. The articles, as such, are invariably *unaccentuated*, whereas the numeral and the pronoun have the *semi accent*, which, by the accession of the *rhetoric*, may be raised to the *full accent*. There is a vast difference between *Es war der Mann* it was that man (and nobody else), and *Es war der Mann* it was the man (not the woman); *Ich habe einen Mann gesehen* I have seen one man (not several) and *Ich habe einen Mann gesehen* I have seen a man.

III. USE OF THE ARTICLES.

The use of the articles in German differs in some respect from the practice of the English language.

I. As regards *proper names*, both languages agree pretty nearly in the use or omission of the article. The following are the most important points in which the German practice deviates more or less from the English.

1. Proper names, preceded by an adjective, require *always* and *invariably* the article: e. g., *das weite Rußland*, *das schöne Paris*; *der gelehrte Tholuck*, *der große Friedrich*, &c.

2. The article is equally required before the proper name of an author or artist, when used for the purpose of designating therewith the works or productions of that author or artist: e. g., *ein Raphael* (a Raphaël) a painting by Raphaël; *der Titian der National Gallerie* the painting by Titian in the National Gallery; *ich habe mir den Göthe angeschafft* I have procured a copy of Göthe's works; *er hat sich den (oder einen) Shakespere bestellt* he has ordered a Shakespere (a copy of Shakespere's works); *haben Sie noch einen Lessing zu verkaufen?* have you still a copy of Lessing's works for sale?

3. The article is sometimes used when speaking familiarly or disdainfully of a person: e. g., *rufe den Johann* call John; *der Fritz hat mir geschrieben* Frederic has written to me; *der Jeffreys war ein Ungeheuer* Jeffreys was a monster.

4. Those names of countries which are exceptionally of the masculine or feminine gender, or of the plural number, always require the article: e. g., *die Türkei*, *der Breisgau*, *die Niederlande*, &c.

5. The article is also sometimes required to mark the dative and accusative, and in some instances also the genitive case of proper names: e. g., *dazu bewog Friedrich Wilhelm den Alexander*; *nun gab der General dem Bonaparte den Rath*; *der Thetis buntes Heer*; *der Tod des Sokrates*; *der Doris goldne Locken*, &c.

II. As regards *common nouns* in general, the practice of the German language requires the article invariably before the genitive case, and frequently before the dative and accusative, in order to mark these cases more distinctly, and thus to avoid ambiguity: e. g., *die Gesetze der Natur* the laws of nature; *die Schwächen des Menschen* the foibles of man; *die Träume der Philosophen* the dreams of philosophers; *ich ziehe das Schmalz der Butter vor* I prefer lard to butter, &c.

III. The article is omitted in German before *appellative nouns*, in some cases where the English generally use the indefinite article or the pronominal possessive adjective. These cases are—

1. Where the appellative noun denotes a quality, condition, or capacity attributed to an individual: e. g., *er soll Soldat werden* he is to be a soldier, i. e., to serve in the army; *sie ist Schauspielerinn* she is an actress, i. e., pursues the vocation of an actress; *er starb als Held* he died like a hero; *er handelte als Vater an mir* he acted as a father to (by) me, i. e., he fulfilled his parental duties to me; *ich sage Ihnen dies als Freund* I tell you this as a friend, &c.

Remark.—But where the appellative noun is intended to designate the species, or genus, or class to which the individual belongs, the

indefinite article is used in the German language also: e. g., *er ist ein Kaufmann* he is a merchant, i. e., belongs to the merchant class, &c.

2. Where two or several appellatives are conjoined, which designate analogous or kindred objects, or objects which, though of dissimilar or even opposite nature, may yet be united in one general or collective idea: e. g., *Du sollst Vater und Mutter ehren* thou shalt honor thy father and thy mother; *er ist mit Weib und Kind fortgegangen* he is gone off with his wife and child (children); *sie hat Vater, Mutter und Bruder verloren* she has lost her father, mother, and brother; *sie bietet ihm Thron und Hand an* she offers him her throne and her hand. Under this head we may mention also certain proverbial sayings and popular expressions, such as, for instance, *über Berg und Thal gehen*; *Haus und Hof verkaufen*; *mit Mann und Maus untergehen*; *mit Haut und Haaren*; *Ros und Reiter*; *etwas mit Hand und Mund versprechen*, &c., in some of which expressions, however, the English language likewise dispenses sometimes with the use of the article.

Remark.—In certain adverbial locutions, formed by the combinations of an appellative noun with a preposition, and indicating the mode and manner or the direction of an action, the article is usually omitted in both languages: e. g., *zu Fuß* on foot, *zu Pferde* on horseback, *zu Tische* at table; *zu Bett gehen* to go to bed; *nach Hause gehen* to go home, &c.

IV. The English omit the article before *appellative nouns* in some cases, where the German language absolutely requires the employment of that part of speech; this is more particularly the case in the plural of appellative nouns. Thus, for instance, we may say in English, Lions are the most courageous of all animals: in German we are obliged to say, *die Löwen sind die muthigsten* (or more correctly, *der Löwe ist das muthigste*) *aller Thiere*. We say also in English, Man is mortal: whereas in German we must say, *der Mensch ist sterblich*. In English, Woman is inferior in strength to man: in German, *das Weib steht an Stärke dem Manne nach*.

V. The *names of materials*, such as *Brod* bread, *Wasser* water, *Wein* wine, *Fleisch* meat, receive the article in German when implying the whole species, with distinct reference to some general quality or property common to all portions or parts of it, or when intended to designate some *particular* kind or portion of it: e. g., *das Wasser ist eine farblose Flüssigkeit* water is a colorless fluid; *das Gold ist gelb* gold is yellow; *der Schnee ist weiß* snow is white; *der Wein erhitzt das Blut* wine heats the blood; *das Eisen ist nützlicher als das Kupfer* iron is more useful than copper; *er hat uns den Wein noch nicht gebracht* (i. e., *den er bringen sollte*) he has not yet brought us the wine (i. e., which he was ordered or expected to bring), &c. In the latter instance, however, it will be observed that the English language requires, likewise, the use of the article.

VI. As regards the use or omission of the article before *abstract nouns*, the practice is pretty much the same in both languages, with this distinction only, that the German language prefers, or at all events does not prohibit, the employment of the article, even in

cases where the abstract noun is used in a general and illimited sense: e. g., *Virtue* is its own reward, may be expressed in German either *Tugend* or *die Tugend belohnt sich selbst*; *Wisdom* and *health* are blessings whose absence wealth cannot supply, *Weisheit und Gesundheit (die Weisheit und die Gesundheit) sind Güter, deren Abwesenheit Reichthum (der Reichthum) nicht ersetzen kann, &c.* In many cases, and more particularly in such where the abstract noun is used in a somewhat more restricted and *quasi-individual* sense, the use of the article is almost imperative in German: e. g., *die Dunkelheit ist die Abwesenheit des Lichts* darkness is the absence of light; *der Schlaf erquicket* sleep refreshes; *die Freiheit ist ein edles Gut* freedom is a noble gift; *das Glück ist unbefändig* fortune is inconstant; *der Stolz ist ein eben so großer Fehler als die Eitelkeit* pride is as great a vice as vanity.

VII. When a substantive in the genitive case immediately precedes another noun, the article before the latter is omitted: e. g., *Meines Vaters Haus* my father's house, or the house of my father; *des Menschen Hoffnung wird oft getäuscht* the hopes of man are often deceived. The article may, in such sentences, be omitted before the genitive case too, if the latter is sufficiently marked either by the termination of the noun, or by some accompanying adjective: e. g., *Durch Freundes Hand und treuer Freunde Rath* through the hand of a friend, and through the advice (counsel) of faithful friends.

VIII. Before nouns denoting weight, number, or measure, the Germans use the *definite*, the English the *indefinite* article: e. g., *fünf Thaler das Pfund* five dollars a pound; *zweimal die Woche* twice a week; *drei Groschen die Elle* three groats an ell; *drei Pfund das Dutzend* three pounds a dozen, *ich habe sehr guten Wein gekauft, zu drei Gulden das Maß* I have bought very good wine at three florins a quart (per quart).

IX. The following nouns, which are used in English without the article, require this adjunct in German: *der Himmel* heaven, *die Erde* earth, *die Hölle* hell, *das Paradies* paradise, *das Fegefeuer* purgatory, *die Regierung* government, *das Parlament*, Parliament, *das Christenthum*, *die Christenheit*, Christendom, Christianity, *die Monarchie* monarchy, *die Aristokratie* aristocracy, *die Natur* nature, *das Leben* life, *der Tod* death, *der Zufall* chance, *das Schicksal* fate, *das Glück* fortune, *das Gesetz* law, *die Sitte* custom, *der Ehestand* matrimony, *das Frühstück* breakfast, *das Mittagessen* dinner, *der Thee* tea, *das Abendessen* supper. The article is also used in German in the following phrases, where it is omitted in English: *in der Stadt wohnen* to live (dwell) in town; *nach der Stadt gehen* to go to town; *in die Schule gehen*, *in die Kirche gehen* to go to school, to church; *nach der Börse gehen* to go on Change; *in der Zeit der Noth* in time of need.

X. The English article, lacking the faculty of denoting either gender or number, need not be repeated before every one of a series of two, three, or more co-ordinate substantives following each other in succession; but, in the German language, the article may be omitted only before the succeeding substantives if they happen to be of the same gender and to stand in the same number as the first; if not, *the proper article must be placed before every one of them*: e. g.,

der Wolf und die Hyäne sind grausam, the wolf and hyena are cruel, (in English, also, more correctly, the wolf and the hyena); *die Mutter und die Schwestern sind ausgegangen* the mother and sisters are gone out; *der Reichthum und die Ehre machen allein nicht glücklich* wealth and honor alone do not make happy; *ich habe das Haus, den Garten und die Wiesen verkauft* I have sold the house, garden, and meadows, &c.

If the compound substantives happen to denote things or persons of a different or opposite kind or class, the article should also be repeated before every one of them, although they may agree in gender and number: e. g., *der Fürst, der Bürger, der Bauer und der Bettler, sie alle haben ihre Pflichten* the prince, the citizen, the peasant, and the beggar, they all have their duties; *der Vater und der Sohn* the father and son.

Moreover, it is best to repeat the article in all cases where its omission might give rise to ambiguity. Thus, for instance, *der Kaiser und der König* means the emperor and the king; whereas, *der Kaiser und König* might mean the emperor-king, i. e., emperor and king in one person: *der Fürst und der Bischof* means, the prince and the bishop; whereas, *der Fürst und Bischof* might mean the prince-bishop, &c.

The definite article is sometimes compounded with a preposition; the following are the most current formations of this kind:—

<i>am</i>	instead of	<i>an dem</i>	<i>im</i>	instead of	<i>in dem</i>
<i>ans</i>	"	<i>an das</i>	<i>ins</i>	"	<i>in das</i>
<i>aufs</i>	"	<i>auf das</i>	<i>vom</i>	"	<i>von dem</i>
<i>beim</i>	"	<i>bei dem</i>	<i>zum</i>	"	<i>zu dem</i>
<i>durchs</i>	"	<i>durch das</i>	<i>zur</i>	"	<i>zu der</i>
<i>fürs</i>	"	<i>für das</i>			

THE SUBSTANTIVE.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

Substantives are either *simple* or *compound*.

The *simple* substantives are either *primitives* or *derivatives*.

The *derivatives* are formed from nominal or verbal roots, either by means of prefixes or by means of terminations (suffixes). The German prefixes that serve for the formation of derivative nouns, are *erz*, *ge*, *mis*, *un*, and *ur*. The prefixes *be*, *ent* (*ant*, *emp*), *er*, *ver*, *zer*, serve in the first place to form derivative verbs; and the substantives that appear with any of these prefixes are derived again from the latter.

The German terminations that serve for the formation of derivative nouns, are *and*, *ath* (*at*), *chen*, *de*, *e*, *ei*, *el*, *er* (*ner*), *heit*, *ich*, *icht*, *ig*, *ing*, *inn*, *keit*, *lein*, *ling*, *nis*, *rich*, *sal*, *schaft*, *sel*, *thum*, *ung*, and *uth*.

The elementary nature and necessarily restricted limits of a work like the present forbid, of course, any lengthy and exhausting dissertation on the signification and use of these prefixes and terminations. A few general hints regarding the use and power of the more important of them will, however, I trust, not be deemed out of place here.

Erz corresponds to the English *arch*.

Ge expresses more particularly the idea of association, assimilation, co-operation.

Miß corresponds to the English *dis* or *mis*; it has also a negative power.

Un has a negative or inverting power.

Ur generally conveys a notion of anteriority or primitiveness.

The terminations *chen* and *lein* serve to form diminutives; in the Upper German dialect, the termination *el* is also frequently employed for that purpose.

In the High German, the termination *el* serves to form, from verbs, substantives designating a tool or implement. Most substantives in *el*, however, are so called *spurious radicals*, i. e., derivatives in which the original root and the termination are so closely and intimately allied, that the separation of the latter would leave a simple assemblage of letters without distinct and independent meaning.

The termination *er* is added to certain female names or appellations, in order to form the name of the male of the species; this termination, and its fellow *ner*, serve also to form, from infinitive and *verbal* and *nominal* (substantive and adjective) roots or primitives, personal nouns, designating the person with reference to the occupation, trade, or business pursued by the same. The termination *er* serves, moreover, to form, from the names of places or countries, personal nouns designating a person with reference to his native country or town: e. g., *ein Spanier* a Spaniard, from *Spanien* Spain; *ein Berliner* a native or inhabitant of Berlin. In many instances, however, the name of the people or nation is the original primitive, and that of the country is formed from it by derivation or composition: e. g., *der Preusse* the Prussian, *Preußen* Prussia; *der Deutsche* the German, *Deutschland* Germany; *der Franke* a Frenchman, Frank, Franconian, *Frankreich* France, *Franken* Francony.

The termination *er* serves finally, also, like *el*, to form, from verbs, substantives designating a tool or implement.

Many nouns in *er* are spurious radicals.

The termination *ling* corresponds to the English *ling*; it conveys generally a notion of passiveness or dependence, and forms in this respect the reverse of the termination *er*: e. g., *der Gönner* patron, *der Günstling* favorite; *der Lehrer* teacher, *der Lehrling* pupil, apprentice; *der Miether* the person who hires, *der Miethling* the person hired, hireling. This termination is, perhaps, on that account, used at present also to form a species of contemptuous diminutive: e. g., *der Dichterling* poetaster, *der Witzling* witling, pretender to wit, *der Frömmeling* hypocritical bigot, pretender to piety, &c.

The termination *ing* is now only exceptionally met with, having mostly merged in the terminations *ling* and *ig*, which latter is accordingly found to correspond sometimes to the English *ing*: e. g., *der König* king (*chuninc*).

The termination *inn* is added to male names or appellations, to form the name of the female of the species.

The terminations *ich* and *icht* form collectives, designating an abundance and accumulation of homogeneous matters: e. g., *das*

Dickicht thickets, *Reisich* brushwood, *Röhricht* ground thickly covered with reeds, *Weidicht* osier bed, *Spülicht* rinsings, washings, &c.

The termination *rich* is a compound of *er* and *ich* (or rather *ing*), which serves to form names or appellations of male persons or animals: e. g., *Wüthrich* tyrant, *Fühnrich* ensign, *Enterich* drake, *Günserich* gander.

The termination *sel* (kindred with *sal*), serves principally to form concrete nouns, designating the object or product of an act or operation: e. g., *das Räthsel* riddle, enigma (the object of the act or operation of guessing or divining); *Häcksel* chopped straw (the product of the operation of chopping straw), &c.

The termination *e* forms, from adjective roots, abstract nouns conveying the idea of a quality or property: e. g., *die Größe* greatness, magnitude, *die Tiefe* depth, *die Schwäche* weakness, *die Treue*, fidelity, &c. Many of these, however, may acquire also concrete signification, and serve to designate some object or matter to which the quality or property expressed by them belongs: e. g., in *die Röthe des Gesichts* the redness of the face, *die Röthe* is an abstract noun, but *Färber-röthe* red dye, is a concrete noun. Compare also *die Schwärze der Tinte* the blackness of ink, with *die Drucker-schwärze* printer's ink; *die Höhe eines Berges* the height of a mountain, with *eine Höhe* or *Anhöhe* eminence, hill, rising ground, &c.

Most substantives in *e* are *spurious radicals*.

heit corresponds in some measure to the English *head* or *hood*. *heit* and *keit* serve also to form abstract nouns conveying the idea of a quality or property; their application is, however, not confined, like that of the preceding termination (*e*), to adjective roots, but extends equally to derivative adjective nouns: e. g., *Brauchbarkeit* fitness, usefulness, *Befcheidenheit* modesty. (The use of *heit* after derivative adjective nouns is restricted to those in *en* and *ern*, and two words in *el* and *er*, viz., *Dunkelheit* darkness, obscurity, and *Sicherheit* security; in all other formations of this nature, *keit* is used.)

heit and *keit* serve also to form, from personal nouns, substantives which designate the nature, state, or condition of the being represented; and also, in a more extended application, that being itself, or a collection or community of beings of the kind or species denoted by the radical: e. g., *die Gottheit*, from *Gott*, means both Godhead and God; *die Mannheit*, from *Mann*, means the nature, state, or condition of man; *die Christenheit* means the community of Christians, the totality of the believers in Christ; *die Menschheit* mankind; *die Geistlichkeit* clergy, &c.

ei (*rei*, *erei*) corresponds to the English *y* or *ry*; it forms, from verbs, abstract nouns denoting the action of the verb, mostly as a continuous or repeated one, and frequently with the accessory notion of contemptuousness or odiousness: e. g., *die Heuchelei* hypocrisy, from *heucheln*; *Bettelei* mendicancy, &c. In some instances it serves also to denote the product of an action or operation: e. g., *die Malerei* (instead of *das Gemälde*) painting, *die Stickerei* embroidery.

ei serves also to form, from personal nouns, substantives designating the station, trade, business, or occupation of the person, as

also frequently the place of residence, or the business-premises of the latter: e. g., *die Jägerei* venery, art and science of the chase; *die Fischerei* fishery; *die Buchdruckerei* art of printing, and also printing office; *die Färberei* the art and trade of dyeing, and also the workshop of a dyer; *die Abtei* abbey, abbacy, abbotship, &c.

niss corresponds to the English *ness*.

Schiff corresponds to the English *ship* or *scape*.

sal forms, from verbs and substantive verbal roots, abstract nouns designating a state or condition: e. g., *die Drangsal* distress, *die Tribsal* affliction. And also concrete nouns: e. g., *das Labsal* refreshment, cordial, restorative; *das Scheusal* object of abhorrence, monster.

thum corresponds to the English *dom*; added to adjectives or verbal roots it forms abstract nouns designating a quality, state, or condition: e. g., *der Reichthum* wealth, opulence, *der Irrthum* error, *das Siechthum* infirmity, sickness, sickliness, &c.

ung corresponds to the English *ing* or *ion*; it serves to form, from transitive verbs, abstract nouns designating the action of the verb: e. g., *die Fütterung* the act of feeding, *die Reibung* friction, act of rubbing, *die Eroberung* act of conquering, conquest, acquisition, *die Hinrichtung* act of executing, execution. In a more extended application, nouns with *ung* designate also the object or state produced by the action or operation, and, in this sense, they are also sometimes formed from intransitive verbs: e. g., *die Mischung* mixture, *die Ladung* charge, *die Erfindung* invention, the thing invented, *die Bemerkung* observation, remark, *die Drohung* threat, *die Rechnung* bill, &c.

With substantives and adjectives *ung* forms concrete collective nouns: e. g., *die Kleidung* clothes, clothing, *die Holzung*, wood, forest, &c.

The terminations *ath* (*at*), *uth*, *de* (*end*, *und*), occur only rarely; they may be said generally to impart to nouns the same signification as *e* and *heit*.

COMPOUND NOUNS consist of two components, which again may be either *simple* or *compound* words. The first component is called the *determinative*; the last, the *basis* or *fundamental* component ("*Grundwort*," literally "*groundword*"). The last component (*Grundwort*) is invariably a substantive or an adjective, or infinitive used substantively; the first or *determinative* component may be either a substantive or the pronoun *Selbst* self, or an adjective or numeral, or infinitive root of a verb, or finally a particle (*adverb* or *preposition* used *adverbially*).

Compound Nouns may be subdivided into two classes, which I will term here, the one *connective* or *separable*, the other *conjunctive* or *inseparable* compounds. By *connective* compounds, I understand those compound nouns that may be separated into their component parts without destroying or altering the sense or signification of the whole: e. g., *der Vollmond* full moon,—*der volle Mond*; *der Rothwein* red wine,—*der rothe Wein*; *das Neujahr* new year,—*das neue Jahr*; *die Oberlippe* upper lip,—*die obere Lippe*; *der Königssohn* king's son,—*der Sohn des Königs*; *das Tageslicht* day-light,—*das Licht des Tages*. To this class belong also compounds consist-

ing of two substantives, of which the last serves as *apposition* to the first: e. g., *Fürst-Bischof* prince bishop, *Prinz-Regent* prince regent, *Gottmensch* God-man, God and man.

In many compounds of this class, the last component denotes the species to which the first component belongs: e. g., *der Rheinstrom* the Rhine stream, river Rhine, i. e., *der Strom Rhein*; *das Harzgebirge* Hartz mountains, i. e., *das Gebirge Harz*; *der Marmorstein* marblestone, i. e., *der Stein von Marmor*; *die Haselstaude* hazel tree, hazel nut tree, i. e., *die Staude, der Hasel*, &c. In compound proper names of this kind, this relation between the two components is inverted: e. g., *Heffen-Darmstadt* Hesse-Darmstadt, *Sachsen-Weimar* Saxe-Weimar, &c.

Note.—Many originally *connective* compounds have passed over into the class of *inseparable* compounds, since the separation into their component parts would altogether destroy, or at least considerably modify, the sense which now attaches to them: e. g., *der Kalkkopf* baldhead, means a person with a bald head; whereas, *der kahle Kopf* would simply imply a head which is bald: *die Jungfrau* means a maid, maiden, virgin; whereas, *die junge Frau* means a married young female. Compare also *der Großvater* grandfather, and *der große Vater* the great father; *der Junggesell* bachelor, and *der junge Gefell* the young man, young fellow. Similar formations are *der Freiherr* baron, *Gelbschnabel* callow-bird, yellow beak, saucy young person, *Altefell* foreman, *Dummkopf* stupid, silly-billy, *Blaubart* bluebeard, *Bürgermeister* mayor, burgomaster, *das Vaterland* fatherland, native land, *die Muttersprache* mother tongue, native tongue, *der Sauerkelee* woodsorrel, *die Wolfsmilch* euphorbia (a plant), *der Rittersporn* larkspur (Delphinium), &c.

Conjunctive or *inseparable* compounds are formed by the intimate combination of two words, of which the respective independent signification is more or less modified and merged in the meaning of the product, and which, accordingly, cannot be separated without detriment to the received sense and signification of the latter: e. g., *der Handschuh* glove, could not well be called *der Schuh der Hand*, or shoe of the hand; *der Fingerhut* thimble, would be very inadequately and incorrectly expressed by *der Hut des Fingers* the hat of the finger. *Inseparable* compounds may, accordingly, be looked upon somewhat in the light of *derivatives*; and the last component as a species of suffix or termination. The compound *Findelkind*, for instance, conveys the same meaning as the derivative *Findling* foundling; *Wartefrau*, the same as *Wärterinn* nurse, &c.

Inseparable compounds are mostly conjoined without the intervention of a connecting letter: e. g., *der Buchdrucker* printer, *der Wundarzt* surgeon, *der Bandwurm* tapeworm, *der Eßtisch* dining-table, &c. A few of them, however, insert a connecting *e* or *i* between the two components: e. g., *der Bräut-i-gam* bridegroom, *die Nacht-i-gall* nightingale, *der Tag-e-dieb* idler, *Tag-e-löhner* day labourer, &c. In most inseparable compounds the determinative stands in the singular; there are, however, some exceptions to this rule: e. g., *der Bücherschrank* book-case, *das Wörterbuch* dictionary, *der Bürstenbinder* brush-maker, *die Töchterchule* girl-school, &c.

In *inseparable* compounds the determinative component receives usually the genitive inflection *s* (es) or *n* (en): e. g., *Tageslicht* day-light

Rathsherr senator, *Fürstenhut* prince's hat (the distinguishing mark of a prince's dignity), *Rabensfeder* raven-quill, crow-quill. Most determinatives of the feminine gender in *e*, take *n*: e. g., *der Erdensohn* the son of earth (clay), *die Sonnenwärme* the warmth or heat of the sun, &c. Monosyllabic determinatives remain usually unaltered: e. g., *der Hutmacher* hat-maker, *die Blutschuld* guilt of blood, crime of bloodshed, murder, *der Nachtwächter* watchman, &c. Some feminine monosyllables, however, take *s*: e. g., *die Aechterklärung* proscription, &c. Derivatives in *ath*, *heit*, *keit*, *ing*, *ling*, *schaft*, *thum*, *ung*, and feminines ending in the accentuated *on* or *öt*, take likewise *s*: e. g., *das Heimathsland* native land, *die Alterthumskunde* archæology, *der Religionskrieg* religious war, sectarian war, &c. *s* is frequently inserted also between the two components, to avoid the dissonance arising from the collision of two mutes or aspirates, such as *bb*, *bd*, *bg*, *db*, *tt*, *kt*, *fh*, &c.: e. g., *der Kalb-s-braten* roast veal, *das Dieb-s-gefindel* gang of thieves, thieving crew, *der Geburt-s-tag* birthday, &c. It is for the same reason that some feminines in *e* take *s* instead of *n*: e. g., *Lieb-es-brief* love-letter, *Liebe-es-dienst* office of love, *Hülfs-s-heer* auxiliary army; and, from the application of a mistaken rule of analogy, also *die Lieb-es-lust*, *der Liebesapfel*, *das Hilfsmittel*, *das Hilfsbuch*, &c. There are, however, some exceptions to this rule: e. g., *das Handgeld*, *der Handdienst*, *die Kunststrafe*, *die Erdbeere*, *der Grenzstein*, &c. The *s* is not inserted between liquids: e. g., *das Mühlrad*, *der Kronleuchter*, *der Kammacher*, *die Gartenmauer*, *der Bettelmann*, &c. Words in *er*, however, take *s* before *Mann*: e. g., *der Ackersmann*, *Bauersmann*, &c.; *Handelsmann* also takes *s*. In some rare instances *er* or *el* is inserted between the two components: e. g., *die Heid-el-beere*, *das Kind-el-bier*, *der Rind-er-braten*, *der Werk-el-tag*, &c.

In some separable compounds, the determinative stands in the plural: e. g., *Weiberlist*, *Hörnerschall*, *Menschenfreund*, *Frauenwürde*, *Blüthenstaub*, *Irrenhaus*, &c.

Note.—Certain compounds exist in a double form, i. e., both as *separable* and as *inseparable* compounds. In the former case, the genitive inflection is added to the determinative component: e. g., *Amtspächter* means tenant-farmer of a domain, *Andmann* means domain judge or steward, or administrator of a public domain; *Landsmann* means compatriot, fellow-countryman, *Landmann* peasant, countryman; *Christenkind* means the child of Christian parents, *Christkind* the child Christ; *Waffersnoth* means peril and distress caused by an inundation, *Waffersnoth* want of water.

If the *determinative* of a compound happens itself to be a compound, it takes the connecting *s*: e. g., *die Hochzeitsfeier*, *das Andachtsbuch*, *der Alltagsmensch*, *die Antrittsrede*. There are, however, some exceptions from this rule: e. g., *Kindbettfeber*, *Wallfischfang*, *Schau-spielhaus*, *Landwehrmann*, *Faßnachtspiel*, *Birnbaumholz*, &c.

Note.—The presence or absence of the connecting *s* serves, in some instances of complex compounds, to indicate the proper point of separation: e. g., *die Abend-mahlzeit* supper, is a compound of *Abend* evening; and *Mahlzeit* meal, *die Abend-mahlzeit* time of the sacrament of the Lord's Supper, is a compound of

Abendmahl Lord's Supper, and *Zeit* time; *das Handwerkzeug* hand-tool, manual implement, such as a hand-saw, for instance, is a compound of *Hand* hand, and *Werkzeug* tool; *das Handwerkszeug* the tools or implements belonging to a craft or trade, is a compound of *Handwerk* handicraft, and *Zeug* implements, apparatus.

Besides the above two classes of *separable* and *inseparable* compounds, the German language acknowledges a third class, usually termed, though somewhat inappropriately, *spurious* compounds.

To this class belong—

1. Compounds, in which an adjective determinative agrees and inflects with the substantive groundword: e. g.,

Der Hohepriester high priest.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i>	der	Hohepriester
<i>Gen.</i>	des	Hohenpriesters
<i>Dat.</i>	dem }	Hohenpriester
<i>Acc.</i>	den }	

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	die }	Hohenpriester
<i>Gen.</i>	der }	
<i>Dat.</i>	den	Hohenpriestern
<i>Acc.</i>	die	Hohenpriester
<i>Nom.</i>	ein	Hoherpriester
<i>Gen.</i>	eines	Hohenpriesters
<i>Dat.</i>	einem }	Hohenpriester
<i>Acc.</i>	einen }	

Similar compounds are *der Geheimerath*, *ein Geheimerrath*, *das Hohelied*, *ein Hohelied*, *die Langeweile*, ennui (but *eine lange Weile* a long time).

2. Certain infinitive locutions representing simple substantive ideas: e. g., *das Sich-gehen-lassen* listlessness, indolence, *se laisser aller*; *das Hin-und-her-gehen* the going to and fro, the walking backwards and forwards; *das Aufersichsein* the being beside oneself; *das Frühaufstehn* the early rising; *das Zuspätkommen* the coming too late, &c.

3. Certain combinations of an adjective with an adverbial determinative, or of a verb with its object or with some adverbial adjection: e. g., *der Nimmersatt*, glutton, *das Immergrün* evergreen, *das Jelängerjeliher* honeysuckle, *der Nichtsnutz* idler, good for nothing, *der Störenfried* disturber of the peace, *der Taugenichts* good for nothing fellow, *der Habenichts* pauper, person possessed of naught, *der Haberecht* wrangler, disputant, *der Springinsfeld* springall, *das Gerathewohl* chance, hazard, *das Stelldichein* rendezvous, appointment, &c.

SECT. I. THE GENDER.

This part of German grammar, besides its own inherent importance, acquires considerable additional interest from the circumstance

that, with comparatively few exceptions, the proper form of inflection of a noun may be known by its gender, as will be seen hereafter in the chapter on the declension of substantives. It is the more unfortunate that it should be so little encompassed by general and comprehensive laws as it actually is. I will, however, endeavour to lay down a series of rules here, which, though necessarily a little diffuse, will, I trust, prove serviceable to the student, and will enable him to determine the proper gender of the immense majority of nouns, without being obliged to consult the dictionary.

We have three genders in German: the *Masculine*, the *Feminine*, and the *Neuter*.

I think it will greatly facilitate the study and comprehension of this important subject, if we distinguish, in the first place, between names or appellations representing animate beings, and nouns representing inanimate things and abstract ideas.

I. NAMES OR APPELLATIONS OF PERSONS AND ANIMALS.

The gender of the names or appellations of persons and animals is generally determined by the natural sex; the names of male persons and male animals are, accordingly, of the masculine; those of female persons and female animals, of the feminine gender: e. g., *der Mann* the man, *der Löwe* the lion, *die Frau* the woman, *die Löwin* the lioness, &c.

To this category belong, of course, the names or appellations of supernal beings, such as the name of God, and the names of angels, demons, spirits, goddesses, nymphs, &c.

Exceptions.—1, *Das Weib* the woman, *das Mensch* opprobrious term applied to low females; 2, The diminutives in *chen* and *lein*, which, as will be seen here below, are invariably of the neuter gender, even though they may have actually lost their original diminutory faculty; as is the case, for instance, with the words *das Mädchen* girl, *das Fräulein* miss, lady, unmarried female (applied originally only to unmarried females of noble extraction); 3, Certain compounds, of which the last component, which, as we shall see hereafter, always determines the gender of the whole word, happens to belong to a different gender from the natural sex of the designated being—e. g., *die Mannsperſon*, *das Mannsbild*, the man, male; *das Weibsbild*, *das Frauenzimmer* the woman, female; *das Weibſtück* the woman (term of contempt).

To appellative nouns, designating a whole class or species of beings, or any individual of the class, without reference to the natural sex, the German language assigns either the neuter gender or one of the two positive genders, as *genus epicœnum*, i. e., equally applying to the male and to the female of the species. As regards the names or appellations of animals, they are pretty equally divided among the three genders. As a general rule, the larger and stronger animals affect in preference the *masculine*; the smaller and weaker, the *feminine*; and those with non-German names, and which are not so generally and familiarly known as the European animals, the *neuter* gender: e. g., *der Efel*, *Löwe*, *Elephant*, *Tiger*, *Bär*, *Wolf*,

Hund, Ochs, Adler, Geier, Strauß, Casuar, Delphin, Hay, &c.; die Katze, Maus, Gans, Schwalbe, Made, Fliege, &c.; das Kameel, Dromedar, Krokodil, Lama, Zebra, Känguruh, &c.

The preceding rule, which, it must be admitted, may appear somewhat vague, is considerably modified, or, more correctly speaking perhaps, rendered more explicit and precise, by the preponderating influence which the form or termination of words exercises over the gender.

Thus the names of animals terminating in *e* are of the feminine gender.

Exceptions.—*Der Affe, Bracke, Bulle, Drache, Falke, Farre, Hase, Löwe, Ochse, Rabe, Rappe, Robbe, Trappe, Weihe.*

The names of animals terminating in *er, ing, ling*, are of the masculine gender.

Exceptions.—The following, terminating in *er*, are of the feminine gender: *die Ammer, Auster, Elster, Natter, Otter, Viper.*

The names of quadrupeds terminating in *el* are of the masculine gender, and so is the word *Vogel* bird; but the names of birds, reptiles, fishes, insects, and worms, in *el*, are of the feminine gender. *Das Wiesel* weasel, is of the neuter gender.

For man, and for a few of the larger, and more particularly of the domestic animals, the German language has distinct appellations for the species—the male, the female, and the young: e. g.,

MALE.	FEMALE.	YOUNG.	SPECIES.
<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	
<i>Mann</i>	<i>Frau</i>	<i>Kind</i>	<i>der Mensch</i>
man	woman	child	man (mankind)
<i>Hengst</i>	<i>Stute</i>	<i>Füllen</i>	<i>das Pferd (Roß)</i>
stallion	mare	foal	horse
<i>Stier (Ochs)</i>	<i>Kuh</i>	<i>Kalb</i>	<i>das Rind</i>
bull, ox	cow	calf	cattle
<i>Widder (Hammel)</i>	<i>Kilbe</i>	<i>Lamm</i>	<i>das Schaf</i>
ram, wether	ewe	lamb	sheep
<i>Eber</i>	<i>Sau</i>	<i>Ferkel</i>	<i>das Schwein</i>
boar	sow	sucking pig	pig
<i>Hahn</i>	<i>Henne</i>	<i>Küchlein</i>	<i>das Huhn</i>
cock	hen	chicken	fowl

Of some others, distinct appellations exist only for the male, female, and young, or simply for the male and female: e. g.,

<i>der Bock</i>	<i>die Ziege (Geiß)</i>	<i>das Zicklein</i>
buck or he-goat	she-goat	kid
<i>der Hirsch</i>	<i>die Hinde (Hindinn)</i> , but more frequently	
stag, hart, deer	hind	[<i>Hirschkuh</i>]

In the former of the preceding two instances, the species is designated by the appellation used for the female (*die Ziege* goat); in the

latter, by that of the male (*der Hirsch* stag): a young stag or fawn is called *Hirschkalb* in German.

In the case of some other animals, the female name is formed from the male, by the addition of the termination *inn*, or, in some rare instances, *e* or *se*; or the male from the female, by means of the termination *er* or *rich*; or, in some exceptional cases, also *ert*: e.g., *der Esel, die Eselinn*; *der Bär, die Bärrinn*; *der Wolf, die Wölfinn*; *der Hund, die Hündinn*; *der Hase, die Häsin*; *der Farre, die Färse* (bullock, heifer); and, on the other hand, *die Katze, der Kater*; *die Gans, der Ganser, Gansert, Gänserich*; *die Ente, der Enterich*; *die Taube, der Tauber, Taubert, Tüberich*.

Note.—I have to call the attention of the pupil here incidentally to the change of the vowels *a, o, u*, to *ä, ö, ü*, in the formation of the feminine from the masculine. The same change occurs, as will be seen hereafter, very frequently in the formation of the plural number of the substantives, and in that of diminutives, of the subjunctive mood of the imperfect tense of verbs, and of the comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives.

A few names of animals form the respective appellations for the male and the female, and in some instances also the young, by composition with the words *Bock, Kuh (Kalb)*, in the case of quadrupeds; *Hahn, Henne*, in the case of birds: e.g., *der Rehbock, die Rehbuck, der Rehkalt*; *der Pfauhahn, die Pfauhenne*; *der Auerhahn, die Auerhenne*.

But for most animals, the only means which the German language affords of designating the sex is to prefix either of the distinguishing adjectives, *männlich* male, or *weiblich* female: e.g., *der männliche Elephant, der weibliche Elephant*; *der männliche or weibliche Adler, Rabe, Geier, Sperling, Fink, Frosch, Käfer, &c.*; *die männliche or weibliche Schwalbe, Nachtigall, Eule, Fliege, &c.*; *das männliche or weibliche Kameel, Nashorn, Lama, Känguruh, Eichhörnchen, &c.*

As regards the names or appellations of persons, the feminine is mostly formed from the masculine, by adding the termination *inn*: e.g., *der Freund, Schwager, Enkel, Wirth, Fürst, König, Bauer, Sackse, Sieger, Jäger, &c.*; *die Freundin, Schwägerinn, Enkelinn, Wirthinn, Fürstinn, Königin, Bäuerinn, Sächsin, Siegerinn, Jägerinn, &c.*

In some rare instances, the masculine is formed from the feminine, by changing the termination *e* to *er*: e.g., *die Wittwe, der Wittwer*.

For some of the terms of relationship, the German language has, like the English, distinct appellations for the male and female: e.g.,

<i>der Vater</i>	<i>die Mutter</i>	(plural collective <i>die Aeltern</i>)
father	mother	parents
<i>der Sohn</i>	<i>die Tochter</i>	<i>das Kind</i>
son	daughter	child
<i>der Bruder</i>	<i>die Schwester</i>	(plural collective <i>die Geschwister</i>)
brother	sister	brother and sister, or brothers and sisters (<i>die Gebrüder</i> brothers)
<i>der Oheim, Ohm, Onkel</i>	<i>die Muhme, Tante</i>	
uncle	aunt	

der Vetter
male cousin

der Neffe
nephew

die Base
female cousin

die Nichte
niece

Some appellations are equally and indiscriminately applicable to the male and to the female; such are, for instance, *der Mensch* man, *Gast* guest, *Zwilling* twin, *Stugling* baby, *Günsling*, *Liebling* favorite, *Findling* foundling; *die Person* person, *Waise* orphan, &c.

II. NOUNS REPRESENTING INANIMATE THINGS, AND ABSTRACT NOUNS.

The gender of the immense majority of the nouns belonging to this class is determined by, and may accordingly in most cases be known from, the form or termination of the noun.

A comparatively small number only have their gender determined by their respective significations. Of these latter we will here treat first.

a. Of the masculine gender are,

1. The names of winds, seasons, months, and days.

Exceptions.—*Das Frühjahr* spring, which is of the neuter gender, because it is a compound with a determinative of that gender. Some authors write also *die Mittwoche* Wednesday, instead of *der Mittwoch*, which latter, however, is the more correct of the two.

2. The names of stones: e. g., *der Rubin*, *Diamant*, *Chrysoptas*, *Onyx*, *Kiesel*, &c.

b. Of the feminine gender are,

Most names of rivers.

Exceptions.—*der Rhein*, *Main*, *Neckar*, *Lech*, *Inn*; and a great many foreign rivers, such as *der Po*, *Arno*, *Anio*, *Don*, *Dnjeper*, *Dnjester*, *Missouri*, *Mississippi*, *Euphrat*, *Douro*, *Tajo*, *Ebro*, *Minho*, *Nil*, *Ganges*, and many more, which simply retain their original masculine gender also in German. A few, however, deviate from this rule, and assume the feminine gender, in obedience to the prevailing analogy: e. g., *die Rhone*, *die Tiber*.

c. Of the neuter gender are,

1. Most collective nouns, and nouns of matter, and more particularly the names of the metals: e. g., *das Volk*, *Vieh*, *Wild*, *Haar*, *Laub*, *Korn*, *Gewölz*, *Gebirge*, *Heer*, *Gehölz*, *Gras*, *Moos*, *Getreide*, *Obst*, &c.; *das Fleisch*, *Blut*, *Wasser*, *Bier*, *Öl*, *Brod*, *Salz*, *Mehl*, *Papier*, *Holz*, &c.; *das Erz*, *Metall*, *Gold*, *Silber*, *Eisen*, *Kupfer*, *Zinn*, &c.

Exceptions.—Some nouns signifying a circumscribed or limited collection of things: e. g., *der Wald*, *Hain*, forest, grove, thicket. Many nouns of matter: e. g., *der Sand*, *Staub*, *Thon*, *Lehm*, *Wein*, *Käse*, &c.; *die Butter*, *Milch*, &c. And the following metals: *der Stahl*, *Tombak*, *Zink*, *Wismuth*, *Kobalt*; *die Platina* (it is, however, more correct to say and write, *das Platin*).

2. The names of countries.

Exceptions.—Of the feminine gender are, *die Pfalz*, *Schweiz*, *Krim*, *Mark*, *Laufitz*; those in *ei*, as *die Türkei*, *Wallachei*, *Tartarei*, &c. the compounds with *au*, as *die Moldau*, *Wetterau*, &c. Of the masc

line gender are, *der Peloponnes*, and the compounds with *Gau*: e. g., *der Rheingau, Breisgau, Thurgau, &c.*

3. The names of towns without exception, even if they happen to be compounds with masculine or feminine determinatives: thus, e. g., *das feste Wittenberg*, although *Berg* is of the masculine; *das lebhaftes Magdeburg*, although *Burg* is of the feminine gender.

4. All words which, without being substantives, are used substantively as abstract or concrete nouns: e. g., *das Gehen, Reiten, Essen; das Grün, Blau, Schwarz; das Schöne, Große, Edle; das Einerlei; das Mein und Dein; das liebe Ich, das vertrauliche Du; das Wenn und Aber; das Ja und Nein*. To this class belong also the names of the letters of the alphabet.

Note.—Adjectives used substantively as representatives of personal nouns, adopt, of course, always the gender of the persons respectively represented by them: e. g., *der Weise, Gelehrte; die Schöne; der or die Deutsche, Verwandte, Bekannte, &c.*

We now come to the last and most important section of the chapter on the gender, viz., that treating of the rules which define the influence of the *form* or *termination* of nouns over their gender. We have here to distinguish, in the first place, between *monosyllabic* and *dis- or poly-syllabic* words.

A. MONOSYLLABLES.

The great majority of monosyllabic words are of the masculine gender. I will append here, for reference, a list of monosyllables of the feminine and neuter genders.

A. Of the feminine gender are the following:—

Acht, Ahn, Angst, Art, Au, Axt, Bahn, Bank, Braut, Brunst, Brust, Brut, Bucht, Burg, Fahrt, Faust, Flucht, Flur field, plain, and also floor (though, in the latter sense, some authors assign the masculine gender to the noun), *Fluth, Form, Fracht, Frau, Frist, Frucht, Furth, Gans, Geiß, Gicht, Gier, Gift* (Mitgift dower), *Grust, Gunst, Haft* imprisonment, *Hand, Hast, Haut, Huld, Hut* protection, pasture-ground, (but *der Hut* hat), *Jacht, Jagd, Kluft, Kost, Kraft, Kuh, Kunst, Kunst, Last, Laus, List, Luft, Lust, Macht, Magd, Mark* mark, boundary, a weight of eight ounces, *Marsch* fen, marsh (but *der Marsch* march), *Mast* feeding, fattening (but *der Mast* mast of a ship), *Maus, Milch, Mils, Nacht, Nath, Noth, Null, Nuss, Ohm* awme (but *der Ohm* (Oheim) uncle), *Pacht, Pest, Pflicht, Post, Pracht, Qual, Raft, Saat, Sau, Schaar, Scham, Schar, Pflugschar* ploughshare, *Schau, Schicht, Schlacht, Schlucht, Schmach, Schnur, Schrift, Schuld, Schur, Schwulst* swelling, tumour (but *der Schwulst* bombast), *See* sea (but *der See* lake), *Spren, Spur, Stadt, Statt, Stirn, Streu, Sucht, That, Thür, Tracht, Trift, Uhr, Wand, Wehr* defence, bulwark, *Welt, Wucht, Wurft, Wuth, Zahl, Zeit, Zier, Zucht, Zunft*. The following, which are used only in compositions: *Dacht* in *Andacht* devotion; *Gall* in *Nachtigall* nightingale; *Kehr*, in *Rückkehr, Heimkehr* return, &c.; *Richt*, in *Nachricht, intelligence, information*; *Sicht*, in *Abticht* intention, *Rücksicht* consideration, *Hinsicht* respect, regard, &c. And the following few

nouns, derived from monosyllabic roots by means of the prefix *Ge*: *Geburt*, *Gefahr*, *Gefchwulst*, *Gestalt*, *Gewähr*, *Gewalt*.

B. Of the neuter gender are the following:—

Aas, *Amt*, *Aß*, *Bad*, *Band* tie, ribbon, bond (but *der Band* volume, binding of a book), *Beet*, *Beil*, *Bein*, *Bett*, *Bier*, *Bild*, *Blatt*, *Blech*, *Blei*, *Blut*, *Boot*, *Brett*, *Brod*, *Buch*, *Bund* bundle (but *der Bund* league, alliance), *Chor* choir (but *der Chor* chorus), *Dach*, *Ding*, *Dorf*, *Er*, *Eis*, *Erz*, *Fach*, *Faß*, *Feld*, *Fell*, *Fett*, *Fleisch*, *Fließ*, *Floß*, *Garn*, *Gas*, *Geld*, *Gift* poison, *Glas*, *Glied*, *Glück*, *Gold*, *Grab*, *Gras*, *Gut*, *Haar*, *Haft* day-fly (but *der Haft* hold, hook, fastening, and *die Haft* imprisonment), *Harz* resin (but *der Harz* Hercynian mountains), *Haupt*, *Haus*, *Heer*, *Heft*, *Heil*, *Hemd*, *Herz*, *Heu*, *Hirn*, *Holz*, *Horn*, *Huhn*, *Jahr*, *Joch*, *Kalb*, *Kinn*, *Kleid*, *Knie*, *Korn*, *Koth* a small and wretched oot (but *der Koth* mud, dirt), *Kraut*, *Kreuz*, *Lamm*, *Land*, *Laub*, *Leid*, *Licht*, *Lied*, *Lob*, *Loch*, *Lohn* laborer's wages or pay (but *der Lohn* reward), *Loos*, *Loth*, *Maal*, *Mahl*, *Malz*, *Mark* marrow, *Maf*, *Maul*, *Meer*, *Mehl*, *Mensch*, *Moos*, *Mus*, *Nest*, *Netz*, *Obst*, *Ohr*, *Öl*, *Öhr*, *Paar*, *Pech*, *Pfand*, *Pferd*, *Pfund*, *Pult*, *Rad*, *Recht*, *Reh*, *Reich*, *Reis* twig (but *der Reis* rice), *Rief*, *Riff*, *Rind*, *Rohr*, *Ros*, *Salz*, *Schaf*, *Scheit*, *Schiff*, *Schild* signboard (but *der Schild* shield), *Schilf*, *Schloß*, *Schmalz*, *Schmeer*, *Schock*, *Schrot*, *Schwein*, *Schwert*, *Seil*, *Sieb*, *Spiel*, *Stift* cloister, canonry, bishoprick (but *der Stift* pin, peg, pencil), *Stroh*, *Stück*, *Tau*, *Thal*, *Theil* share (but *der Theil* part, portion of a whole), *Thier*, *Thor* gate (but *der Thor* fool), *Tuch*, *Vieh*, *Volk*, *Wachs*, *Wamms*, *Weh*, *Wehr* wear, dam, dyke, *Weib*, *Werst*, *Werg*, *Werk*, *Wild*, *Wort*, *Wrack*, *Zelt*, *Zeug* apparatus, implements (but *der Zeug* stuff, cloth, textile fabrics), *Ziel*, *Zinn*.

b. DIS- AND POLY-SYLLABIC WORDS.

A. Of the masculine gender are,

1. All nouns terminating in *ing* and *ling*.

Exception.—*das Messing* (according to c 1, page 33.)

2. Most nouns terminating in *el*, *en*, *er*.

Exceptions in *el*.—A. Of the feminine gender are,

Die Achsel, *Ampel*, *Amsel*, *Angel*, *Affel*, *Atzel*, *Bibel*, *Brezel*, *Buchel*, *Buckel* knob, boss, stud (but *der Buckel* hump), *Dattel*, *Deichsel*, *Distel*, *Drossel*, *Eichel*, *Fackel*, *Fessel*, *Fibel*, *Fiedel*, *Fuchtel*, *Gabel*, *Geißel* lash, scourge (but *der Geißel* or *Geißel* hostage), *Gurgel*, *Hasel*, *Hachel*, *Hummel*, *Kachel*, *Kanzel*, *Kartoffel*, *Klingel*, *Koppel*, *Kugel*, *Kuppel*, *Kurbel*, *Mandel* almond, tonsil, *Mangel* mangle (but *der Mangel* want), *Mispel*, *Mistel*, *Morchel*, *Muschel*, *Muskel* (but also *der Muskel*), *Nadel*, *Nessel*, *Nudel*, *Orgel*, *Pappel*, *Pustel*, *Raschel*, *Raffel*, *Rohrdornel*, *Ringel*, *Rünzel*, *Schachtel*, *Schaukel*, *Schaukel*, *Schindel*, *Schüssel*, *Semmel*, *Sichel*, *Spendel*, *Spindel*, *Staffel*, *Stoppel*, *Striegel*, *Tafel*, *Troddel*, *Trommel*, *Trüffel*, *Vocabel*, *Wachtel*, *Waffel*, *Windel*, *Wurzel*, *Ziegel*, *Zwiebel*; and also nouns in *el*, formed from Latin words in *ula*, Italian words in *ola*, and Greek words in *ολή*, *as*, e. g., *die Aurikel*, *Fabel*, *Fistel*, *Formel*, *Insel*, *Kapfel*, *Klausel*, *Partikel*, *Prümel*, *Regel*, *Sportel*; *Gondel*, *Tarantel*; *Hyperbel*, *Parabel*, &c.

B. Of the neuter gender are,

Das Bündel, *Mandel* a number of fifteen, *Mittel*, *Nösel*, *Rudel*

Scharmüßel, Segel, Siegel, Wiesel; and nouns derived from Latin neuters, as, e. g., *das Exempel, Kapitel, Orakel, Tabernakel, &c.*; and the Upper German diminutives in *el*, as, e. g., *das Mädel, Dörfel*.

Exceptions in en.—Of the neuter gender are,

Das Almosen, Becken, Kissen, Laken, Leben, Lehen, Wappen, Wesen, Zeichen, and all foreign words terminating in *en*, such as *das Examen, Carmen, Omen, &c.*

Exceptions in er.—A. Of the feminine gender are,

Die Ader, Ammer, Aster, Auster, Blatter, Butter, Ceder, Dauer, Elster, Fafer, Feder, Feier, Fiber, Flitter, Folter, Halfter, Kammer, Kapper the fruit-bud of the *Capparis Spinosa* Linn., *Kelior, Kicher, Kiefer* pine (but *der Kiefer* jaw, jaw-bone), *Klafter* fathom, measure for wood (in some parts of Germany *das Klafter*), *Klammer, Klap- per, Klunker, Lauer, Leber, Leier, Leiter* ladder (but *der Leiter* guide), *Letter, Marter, Mafer, Mauer, Natter, Nummer, Oper, Otter, Rüstler* elm, maple (but *der Rüstler* stilt of the plough), *Scheuer* barn, *Schleuder, Schulter, Steuer* tax, *Trauer, Trümmer, Vesper, Viper, Wimper, Ziffer, Zither*.

B. Of the neuter gender are,

Das Alter, Bauer cage (but *der Bauer* peasant), *Euter, Fenster, Feuer, Fieber, Fuder, Futter, Gatter, Gitter, Kloster, Koller* cape, doublet, bodice (but *der Koller* staggers, frenzy), *Kupfer* copperplate engraving, *Lachter, Lager, Laster, Leder, Luder, Matter, Messer* knife (but *der Messer* he that measures), *Mieder, Muster, Opfer, Pflaster, Polster, Pulver, Register, Ruder, Schauer* (das and der) shower of rain, shed, covering (but *der Schauer* shuddering, shivering fit), *Scepter, Steuer* rudder, helm, *Theater, Ufer, Wasser, Wetter, Wunder, Ziemer* (Reh- ziemer back or loin of a roe), *Zimmer*.

B. Of the feminine gender are,

The immense majority of nouns terminating in *ath, de, e, ei, heit, inn, keit, schaft, ung, uth*.

Exceptions.—*der Kufe, der Sprosse* sprout, shoot (but *die Sprosse* step of a ladder); *das Auge, Ende, Erbe*; *der Zierath, der Hornung*; *das Petschaft*.

C. Of the neuter gender are,

1. All diminutives in *chen* and *lein*, and, of course, also the Upper German diminutives in *el*.

2. Most nouns terminating in *sel, sal, thum, and nis*; and also sub- stantives in *tel*, derived from numeral adjectives.

Exceptions in al: *die Drangsal* (used by some authors, however, also as neuter), *Mühsal, Trübsal*. In *thum*: *der Irrthum, Reichthum*; some authors write also *der Beweisthum, Wachsthum*, but it is unquestionably more correct to use these two latter nouns as neuters.

In *nis*: those nouns which express the purely abstract conception or idea of a state, condition, act, or event, are of the feminine gender: e. g., *die Bedrängnis, Befugnis, Bekümmernis, Besorgnis, Betrübnis, Bewandnis, Empfängnis, Erkenntnis, Erlaubnis, Ersparnis, Fäulnis, Finsternis, Kenntnis, Trocknis, Verdammnis, Verderbnis, Verlöb- nis, Verstumnis, Wildnis*. But of the neuter gender are, *das Bedürfnis, Begrübnis, Verhältnis*, and all concrete abstract

nouns in *nif*, as, e. g., *das Behältniß*, *Gedächtniß*, *Vermöchniß*, *Verzeichniß*, *Bündniß*, *Erzeugniß*, *Bildniß*, *Ergebniß*, *Wagniß*, *Zeugniß*. Some of these nouns have two genders, being *feminines* in their abstract, *neuters* in their concrete-abstract signification: e. g., *die Ersparniß* act of saving, *das Ersparniß* what is saved, savings; *die Erkenntniß* comprehension, perception, knowledge, *das Erkenntniß* sentence pronounced by a judge, decree; *die Ärgerniß* vexation, *das Ärgerniß* scandal; *die Versümmniß* neglect, *das Versümmniß* omission, loss occasioned by neglect.

3. Many nouns formed with the prefix *ge*.

Exceptions.—*der Gebrauch*, *Gedanken*, *Genuß*, *Geruch*, *Gefang*, *Geschmack*, *Gewinn*, *Gewinst*; *die Geburt*, *Gebühr*, *Gemeinde*, *Genüge*, *Geschichte*.

Compound substantives take the gender of the last or determinative component.

Exceptions.—*der Abscheu*, determinative component *die Scheu*; *das Gegentheil*, and, with most authors, also *das Vordertheil*, *Hintertheil*, determinative component *der Theil*; *der Mittwoch*, determinative component *die Woche*; *die Neunauge*, determinative component *das Auge*; *die Antwort* answer (this word is, however, no compound, properly speaking, but is simply formed from *das Wort*, by means of the prefix *ant*); *die Anmuth*, *Demuth*, *Großmuth*, *Langmuth*, *Sanftmuth*, *Schweremuth*, *Wehmuth*, determinative component *der Muth*; but *der Edelmuth*, *Hochmuth*, *Gleichmuth*, *Kleinmuth*, *Übermuth*, *Wankelmuth*, &c.

That the names of towns are invariably of the neuter gender, even if they happen to be compounds with masculine or feminine determinatives, has been already stated. (See c 3, page 34.)

Foreign words generally retain the gender that belongs to them in the language from which they are more immediately derived: e. g., *der Kanal* canal, *die Natur* natura, *die Universität* universitas, *das Gymnasium*, &c.

There are, however, numerous exceptions from this rule: thus, for instance, we say in German, *die Menage*, *die Etage*, *die Rosine*, *die Ranunkel*, *die Mythe*, *die Floskel*, *die Hyacinthe*, though these words are derived from French, Latin, or Greek masculines; *das Labyrinth*, *Paradies*, *Krokodil*, *Genie*, *Consulat*, *Triumvirat*, *Indignat*, *Principat*, and other foreign words in *at*, though they are derived from Latin or French masculines; *das Echo*, *Kathedr*, *Almojen*, *Abentheuer*, *der Purpur*, *Dom*, *Dialekt*, though these words are derived from Greek or Latin feminines; *der Altar*, *Palast*, *Tribut*, though derived from Latin neuters.

In several words, the gender marks a difference of signification. Most of these words have been pointed out already in the several lists appended to the divers preceding rules. The few that have not found a place in either of these lists follow here:—

die Armuth poverty

das Armuth the poor (a provincialism)

der Bulle bull, male of the cow
der Erbe heir

die Bulle bull, a papal decree
das Erbe inheritance

der Gefchoß (*Schoß*) tax, story
 of a house, floor
der Heide pagan
der Kaper privateer

der Kunde customer

der Schenke (*Schenk*, *Mund-*
schenk) cup-bearer

der Verdienst profit, earnings,
 reward

der Weihe kite

das Gefchoß missile

die Heide heath

die Kaper (more properly *die*
Kapper) caper, the fruit of
 the Capparis Spinosa Linn.

die Kunde information, know-
 ledge

die Schenke ale-house, liquor-
 shop

das Verdienst merit

die Weihe consecration

SECT. II.—THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

GENERAL RULES.

I. All nouns substantive of the feminine gender remain unaltered in the singular number.

Note 1.—The obsolete termination of the genitive and dative singular in *en* is retained in a few rare instances only: e. g., *die Kirche unserer lieben Frauen* (instead of *Frau*) the church of our blessed lady, *seiner Frauen* (instead of *Frau*) *Schwester* his wife's sister. In the latter case, the *en* is used in order to avoid any ambiguity as to the real meaning of the sentence, *seiner Frau Schwester* being the genitive of *seine Frau Schwester* which means simply his sister (Madame as *sœur*). Göthe writes also, "*Agamemnon fiel durch seiner Frauen und Ägistheus Tücke.*" So also in certain compounds, as *Sonnenwärme*, *Erdensohn*, *Freudentag*, &c.; but more particularly in certain adverbial locutions formed by a preposition with a feminine substantive, without the intervention of the article, as, e. g., *auf Erden*, *mit Ehren*, *mit Freuden*, *von Gottes Gnaden*, *zu Gunsten*, *in Mitten*, *von Seiten*, *zu Schanden werden*, *von Statten gehen*; but where an article or adjective intervenes between the preposition and the feminine substantive, the indeclinable form of the latter is maintained; thus we say, for instance, *zu seiner Ehre*, *mit großer Freude*, *auf der Erde*, *von dieser Seite*, &c. Poets will, however, in some instances, use even in this case the obsolete form in *en*: e. g.,

"Fest gemauert in der Erden,
 Steht die Form, aus Lehm gebrannt."

Note 2.—Some compounds of feminine nouns insert *s* between the two components: e. g., *das Arbeitshaus*, from *die Arbeit*; *die Achterklärung*, from *die Acht*, &c. The insertion of this *s*, which rests however almost entirely upon purely phonetic grounds, takes place especially after determinative components of the feminine gender ending in *ath*, *eit*, *heit*, *keit*, *schaft*, *ung*, *urt*, and the accentuated *ät* and *on*; exceptionally also after feminines in *e*—e. g., *der Liebestrank*, from *die Liebe*; *das Hülfsmittel*, from *die Hilfe*. (See and compare also the remarks on compound words at the commencement of this chapter.)

II. The dative plural of all nouns substantive terminates in *n*.

Note.—Foreign words alone, that have not yet assumed a German shape or dress, are excluded from the application of this rule. (See page 50.)

III. The nominative, genitive, and accusative of the plural number terminate invariably alike.

IV. Compound words inflect only their last component, and this almost invariably according to the form of declension to which the latter happens to belong.

Exceptions.—*die Vollmacht* and *die Ohnmacht*, which form their plural according to the weak declension in *en*, *die Ohnmachten*, *die Vollmachten*; whereas the plural of their last component, *die Macht*, is *die Mächte*.

V. Substantives denoting simply and solely the number, measure, dimension, or weight of a thing, stand invariably in the singular after numerals: e. g., *zwölf Mann Soldaten* twelve soldiers, but *zwölf Männer* twelve men, i. e., male adults; *zehn Stück Vieh* ten heads (pieces) of cattle; *sechs Paar Schnallen* six pair of buckles, but *zwei Brautpaare, Ehepaare* two couples of betrothed, two married couples; *drei Buch Papier* three quires of paper; *drei Maß Wein* three quarts of wine; *vier Glas Wein* four glasses of wine, but *vier Weingläser* four wineglasses; *sechs Fuß* six feet, *vier Zoll* four inches, *acht Pfund* eight pounds, *viele Mann Soldaten* a great many soldiers, *mehre Paar Strümpfe* several pairs of stockings, *einige Buch Papier* several quires of paper, *vierzig Kopf Kohl* forty heads of cabbage, &c.

Exceptions.—1. Terms of measure terminating in *e*, and accordingly of the feminine gender, such as *Kanne, Elle, Tonne, Metze*, &c., are put in the plural after plural numerals: e. g., *sechs Kannen Bier* twelve quarts of beer, *vier Ellen Band* four ells (near three yards) of ribbon, &c.

2. Terms of measure, which designate at the same time the nature or substance of the thing measured, are also put in the plural after numerals. To this class belong more particularly,

a. The names of coins: e. g., *zwölf Pfennige machen einen Groschen* twelve pence make one groat, &c.

b. The denominations of divisions of time, such as *Minute, Stunde, Monat, Tag, Woche, Jahr, Jahrhundert*, &c.: e. g., *zwei Jahre, drei Monate*, &c.

So we say, also, *vierzig Köpfe* forty heads (of human beings), *zwanzig Häupter* twenty heads (of cattle).

THE TWO DECLENSIONS.

The declension of substantives also forms a rather intricate and difficult part of German grammar.

I have endeavoured here to encompass this important subject by a limited and easily manageable set of plain and comprehensive rules, encumbered by the fewest possible number of exceptions.

The nouns substantive are most conveniently arranged under *two declensions*, which we will call here respectively the *weak* and the *strong* declension.

THE SUBSTANTIVE.

a. WEAK DECLENSION.

Singular.

Nominative	—
Genitive	}
Dative	
Accusative	

Plural.

Nominative	} en-n
Genitive	
Dative	
Accusative	

EXAMPLES.

Der Mensch man.*Singular.*

Nom.	der	Mensch
Gen.	des	}
Dat.	dem	
Acc.	den	

Plural.

Nom.	die	} Menschen.
Gen.	der	
Dat.	den	
Acc.	die	

Die Frau woman.*Singular.*

Nom.	die	} Frau*
Gen.	der	
Dat.	der	
Acc.	die	

Plural.

Nom.	die	} Frauen.
Gen.	der	
Dat.	den	
Acc.	die	

Der Löwe lion.*Singular.*

Nom.	der	Löwe
Gen.	des	}
Dat.	dem	
Acc.	den	

Plural.

Nom.	die	} Löwen
Gen.	der	
Dat.	den	
Acc.	die	

Die Feder feather, pen.*Singular.*

Nom.	die	} Feder.
Gen.	der	
Dat.	der	
Acc.	die	

Plural.

Nom.	die	} Federn.
Gen.	der	
Dat.	den	
Acc.	die	

The simple termination *n* is given to nouns ending in *e*, or in the non- or semi-accentuated terminations *el*, *er*, *ar*.

All other nouns belonging to this declension take the full termination *en*. In *der Tartar*, *der Bulgar*, *der Magyar*, *der Barbar*, the *ar* is accentuated, and these words take accordingly the full termination. The word *Herr* sir, mister, gentleman, lord, forms an exception from this rule, taking a simple *n* in the genitive, dative, and accusative of the singular; in the plural, however, it takes the full termi-

* In accordance with General Rule 1, page 33.

nation *en*. No word belonging to this declension changes the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in the plural.

The weak declension comprises—

1. Nearly all nouns substantive of the feminine gender.

Exceptions.—*a*. The following monosyllables: *die Angst, Axt, Bank* bench (but *die Bank* bank, money bank, inflects after the weak declension), *Braut, Brunst, Brust, Faust, Flucht* (in *Ausflucht*), *Frucht, Gans, Gruft, Gunst, Hand, Haut, Kluft, Kraft, Kuh, Kunst, Kunst, Laus, Luft, Lust, Macht, Magd, Maus, Nacht, Nath, Noth, Nuss, Sau* sow (*die Sauen* is a term of venery for full-grown wild pigs), *Schnur* lace (but *die Schnur* son's wife, daughter-in-law, inflects after the weak declension), *Schwulst, Stadt, Wand, Wurst, Zucht, Zunft*.

b. Those terminating in *sal* and *niss*.

c. The two words *Mutter* and *Tochter*.

All these belong to the strong declension; those sub. *c* to the first, sub. *a* and *b* to the second form.

2. The following masculines:—

a. Monosyllables: *Der Ahn, Bär, Bursch, Christ, Fink, Fürst, Geck, Graf, Greif, Held, Herr, Hirt, Lump* (this word is frequently inflected also after the second form of the strong declension), *Mensch, Mohr, Mond* month (but *Mond* moon, inflects after the second form of the strong declension), *Narr, Nerv, Ochs, Prinz, Schenk, Schöps* wether (this word is, however, frequently inflected also after the second form of the strong declension), *Spatz, Strauß* ostrich (this word is more correctly inflected after the strong declension, but without modification of the *a* in the plural; *der Strauß* nosegay, takes the inflection of the strong declension, and modifies the *a* to *ä* in the plural, *die Sträuße*), *Thor*. And the following compounds: *der Buchstab, Hagestolz, Insaß, Vorfahr, Unterthan* subject (the singular of the latter noun is frequently formed after the first form of the strong declension—gen. *des Unterthans*, dat. *dem*, acc. *den Unterthan*).

Note.—The following monosyllables, of the masculine gender, were formerly, and are still now occasionally, particularly in the Upper German dialect, inflected after the weak declension: *der Aar, Greis, Hahn* (particularly in compounds), *Mai, März, Reif* rime, hoar frost, *Schelm, Schwan* (particularly in compounds), *Stahr* starling.

b. Dis- and poly-syllabic masculines terminating in *e*.

Exceptions in e.—*Der Käse*, which belongs to the first form of the strong declension.

c. A few derivatives in *er* and *ar*, viz., *der Bauer* peasant (but *der Bauer* builder, and its compounds, inflect after the strong declension), *Gevatter, Nachbar, Vetter*. These three latter are frequently, though incorrectly, inflected in the singular, after the first form of the strong declension; of *Gevatter*, the plural *die Gevatter* is also frequently used instead of the regular form, *die Gevattern*); *der Baier* Bavarian, *Pommer* Pomeranian, *Kaffer, Kaffir, Caffre, Ungar* Hungarian, *Bulgar* Bulgarian, *Tartar* Tartar, *Barbar* or *Berber* inhabitant of Barbary.

d. *Der Kofack, Wallach, Tyrann*.

c. Foreign words of the masculine gender terminating in *e, t, f, ik*, and which are, for the most part, personal nouns, and all compounds with the Greek roots *arch, graph, krat, log, nom, soph*: e.g., *der Alumne, Adjutant, Phantasi, Katholik, Monarch, Geograph, Demokrat, Philolog, Astronom, Philosoph*.

Exceptions in *t*.—*Der Affect, Aspect* (these two words have a double plural, viz., *die Affecte, Aspecte*, and *die Affecten, Aspecten*; the latter form has a collective signification—thus we say, *ein Mensch ohne Affecten* a cold unimpassioned being, but *Haf und Liebe find einander entgegengesetzte Affecte* love and hatred are opposite passions), *Dialekt, District, Prospect, Respect, Salat*, and a few other foreign words in *t*. In *ft*: *Der Bombast, Impost, Palast, Morast*, and a few more in *ft*.

Note.—*Der Cadet* doubles the *t* in the genitive and the other remaining cases of the singular and plural numbers, *des Cadetten, &c.*

b. STRONG DECLENSION.

This is most conveniently subdivided into two forms.

FIRST FORM.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	—	Nom.	—
Gen.	—	Gen.	—
Dat.	—	Dat.	—n
Acc.	—	Acc.	—

EXAMPLES.

Der Spiegel mirror.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	der Spiegel	Nom.	die Spiegel
Gen.	des Spiegels	Gen.	der Spiegel
Dat.	dem Spiegel	Dat.	den Spiegeln
Acc.	den Spiegel	Acc.	die Spiegel

Das Mädchen girl.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	das Mädchen	Nom.	die Mädchen
Gen.	des Mädchens	Gen.	der Mädchen
Dat.	dem Mädchen	Dat.	den Mädchen
Acc.	das Mädchen.	Acc.	die Mädchen

Das Gemälde picture.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	das Gemälde	Nom.	die Gemälde
Gen.	des Gemäldes	Gen.	der Gemälde
Dat.	dem Gemälde	Dat.	den Gemälden
Acc.	das Gemälde	Acc.	die Gemälde

Die Mutter mother.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	die	die Mütter
<i>Gen.</i>	der	der Mütter
<i>Dat.</i>	der	den Müttern
<i>Acc.</i>	die	die Mütter

Die Tochter daughter.

<i>Nom.</i>	die	die Töchter
<i>Gen.</i>	der	der Töchter
<i>Dat.</i>	der	den Töchtern
<i>Acc.</i>	die	die Töchter

Note.—These are the only two feminine nouns that belong to this form of the strong declension.

Der Käse.

<i>Nom.</i>	der Käse	die Käse
<i>Gen.</i>	des Käses	der Käse
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Käse	den Käsen
<i>Acc.</i>	den Käse	die Käse

Note.—This is the only masculine noun in *e* belonging to this form of the strong declension.

To this form belong only dis- and poly-syllabic nouns of the masculine and neuter gender terminating in *el*, *en*, *em* (*Athem* or *Odem* breath), and *er* (but not *ier*, which termination is inflected after the second form); neuters in *e*, with the prefix *Ge*; all diminutives in *chen* and *lein*; and the three nouns particularised in the examples.

Note.—The following words, *der Frieden*, *Funken*, *Gedanken*, *Gefallen*, *Glauben*, *Haufen*, *Namen*, *Samen*, *Schaden*, *Willen*, are still occasionally used in the nominative singular in their obsolete weak form, *der Friede*, *Funke*, *Gedanke*, &c.; but the genitive is always formed in *s*, or rather *ns*: e. g., *des Friedens*, *des Gedankens*, &c. The plural form, *die Pantoffeln* slippers, and *die Stiefeln* boots, is frequently met with; the only regular form, however, is *die Pantoffel*, *die Stiefel*. The weak form is here, at the best, excusable only when it is intended to designate a pair of slippers or boots. The plural *die Muskeln*, which is almost exclusively used instead of *die Muskel*, belongs more properly to the feminine noun *die Muskel*.

Der Stachel sting, prick, goad, thorn, has a double plural, *die Stachel* and *die Stacheln*; the latter has more of a collective signification.

Der Lorber laurel, also has a double plural, *die Lorber* and *die Lorbern*; the latter form is more frequently used than the former. *Die Lorbereen* is the plural of *die Lorbeere*.

None of the neuters belonging to this form, with the single exception of *das Kloster* cloister, which forms its plural *die Klöster*, changes the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in the plural. Most of the masculine nouns, however, belonging to this form, change the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, in the plural. I will append here, for reference, a list of the principal nouns masculine belonging to this form that retain the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, unaltered in the plural. In *el*: *der Buckel*, *Hobel*, *Knorpel*, *Matel*, *Pantoffel*, *Pudel*, *Spargel*, *Stachel*, *Strudel*, *Zobel*. In *em*

Athem. In *en*: *Balken, Ballen, Braten, Brunnen, Busen, Daumen, Drachen, Funken, Galgen, Gaumen, Gedanken, Gefallen, Glauben, Graben* (*die Gräben* is, however, more frequently used than *die Graben*, although the latter is the more correct form of the two), *Groschen, Gulden, Haken, Haufen, Husten, Kasten* (*die Kästen* is incorrect), *Kloben, Knochen, Knorren, Knoten, Kragen* (*die Krügen* is incorrect), *Kuchen, Lumpen, Magen, Morgen, Nachen, Nacken, Namen, Orden, Posten, Ranzen, Rasen, Rocken, Samen, Schaden* (*die Schäden* is, however, more frequently used than *die Schaden*, although the latter is certainly the more correct form of the two), *Schatten, Schnupfen, Schoppen, Sparren, Spaten, Stollen, Tropfen, Wagen* (although *die Wägen* would be grammatically correct), *Zapfen.* In *er*: *Adler, Anger, Anker, Donner, Gauner, Hamster, Hummer, Junker, Kater, Knauser, Koffer, Marder, Panzer, Pranger, Schauer, Schuster, Sommer, Thaler, Zober, Zucker*, and all derivatives in *er* and *ner*. Some authors write also *die Boden* and *die Faden*, but *Böden* and *Füden* are more correct. *Der Bogen* bow, changes the *o* to *ö* in the plural (the form *die Bogen* bows, is but rarely used); but the plural of *der Bogen* sheet of paper, is invariably *die Bogen*.

Die Laden means window-shutters, *die Läden* shops.

SECOND FORM.

To this form belong all nouns substantive not comprised in the first form, or in the weak declension, and also all the exceptions from the latter, less three, *der Küse*, *die Mutter*, and *die Tochter*, which, as we have seen already, belong to the first form.

The following are the regular inflections of this form:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	—	Nom.	—e
Gen.	—es	Gen.	—e
Dat.	—e	Dat.	—en
Acc.	—	Acc.	—e

EXAMPLES.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	der Fisch	die Fische
<i>Gen.</i>	des Fisches	der Fische
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Fische	den Fischen
<i>Acc.</i>	den Fisch	die Fische

Der Bach brook.

<i>Nom.</i>	der Bach	die Bäche
<i>Gen.</i>	des Baches	der Bäche
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Bache	den Bächen
<i>Acc.</i>	den Bach	die Bäche

Das Haar hair.

<i>Nom.</i>	das Haar	die Haare
<i>Gen.</i>	des Haares	der Haare
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Haare	den Haaren
<i>Acc.</i>	das Haar	die Haare

Die Kraft vigor, force, power.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	die	die Kräfte
Gen.	der	der Kräfte
Dat.	der	den Kräften
Acc.	die	die Kräfte

A certain number of masculines and neuters belonging to this form deviate in the plural from the regular inflection, some taking the termination *er* instead of *e*, others *en* or *n*. The number of these exceptions is limited; yet it has been thought considerable enough to warrant the creation of two additional distinct forms of declension. The deviations in question being confined, however, to the plural number, I have thought it most expedient here to treat them simply as exceptions from the rule, the more so, as certain observations regarding the retention or omission of the *e* in the genitive and dative of the singular, and which will be found here below, apply equally to all substantives of the second form.

Having premised this much, I will now proceed to give the two exceptional forms for the plural number.

	A.
Nom.	—er
Gen.	—er
Dat.	—ern
Acc.	—er

EXAMPLES.

Die Bücher the books (plural of *das Buch*).

Nom.	die Bücher	Dat.	den Büchern
Gen.	der Bücher	Acc.	die Bücher

Die Lieder the songs (plural of *das Lied* song).

Nom.	die Lieder	Dat.	den Liedern
Gen.	der Lieder	Acc.	die Lieder

Die Männer the men (plural of *der Mann* man).

Nom.	die Männer	Dat.	den Männern
Gen.	der Männer	Acc.	die Männer

The following substantives of the second form of the strong declension take *er* in the plural :—

1. Monosyllables.

a. Neuters: *Das Aas*, *Amt*, *Bad*, *Band* ribbon (but *das Band* bond, tie of blood or friendship, forms its plural *die Bande*; the plural *Banden* fetters, belongs probably to the singular *die Bande* band, edge, border, long broad stripe), *Bild*, *Blatt*, *Brett*, *Buch*, *Dach*, *Ding* (*die Dinger* thingum-bobs, but *die Dinge* things), *Dorf*, *Et*, *Fach*, *Faß*, *Feld*, *Geld*, *Glas*, *Glied*, *Grab*, *Gras*, *Gut*, *Haupt*, *Haus*, *Hem*

shirt (this word has the regular plural *die Hemde* by the side of *die Hemder* and *die Hemden*; the latter form is the most frequently used of the three), *Holz*, *Horn* (*die Hörner* horns, but *die Horne* different kinds or species of horn), *Huhn*, *Joch* (*die Jöcher* is, however, less correct, nor so frequently used as *die Joche*), *Kalb*, *Kind*, *Kleid*, *Korn*, *Kraut*, *Lamm*, *Land* (*die Länder* countries, but *die Lande* regions, lands, and also the different component provinces of a state spoken of collectively, as, e. g., *die Niederlande* the Netherlands, *die Preussischen Lande* the Prussian dominions), *Licht* (*die Lichter* flames, lights, lumina, but *die Lichte* candles of wax, tallow, &c.), *Lied*, *Loch*; *Maal* mole, sign, mark, has in the plural *die Mäler* (*das Mal* in *Denkmal* memorial, monument; *Merkmal* mark, sign, token, &c.; and *das Mahl* meal, *Gastmahl* banquet, entertainment, &c., form their plural usually after the same fashion; in more elevated and poetic language, however, we say, *die Merkmale*, *Denkmale*, *Gastmahle*; *das Mal* time, repetition of any act, has in the plural invariably *die Male*—e. g., *zu vier Malen* at four times, *zu verschiedenen Malen* repeatedly, at different times); *Maul*, *Mensch* low and contemptible term for woman, *Nest*, *Pfand*, *Rad*, *Reis*, *Rind*, *Scheit* piece of wood, billet (*die Scheiter* and *die Scheite* are used almost indiscriminately), *Schild*, *Schloß*, *Schwerdt*, *Stift* ecclesiastical endowment, canonry, bishoprick (*die Stifter* and *die Stifte*, the former, however, is the more usual form of the two; *der Stift* pin, peg, style, pencil, has invariably *die Stifte* in the plural), *Thal* dale, valley (*die Thäler*, in the poetic language, however, *die Thale*), *Tuch* kerchief (but *Tuch* cloth, has in the plural *die Tuche*), *Volk*, *Wammes*, *Weib*, *Wort* (*Wörter* isolated or disconnected words, *Worte* words connected to speech—e. g., *Campe hat viele neue Wörter gemacht* Campe has made a great many new words; *viel Worte*, *wenig Sinn* many words and little meaning).

b. Masculines: *der Geist*, *Gott*, *Leib*, *Mann*,* *Mund* in *Vormund*, *Ort*,† *Rand*, *Strauß* nosegay (*die Sträuße* is, however, more correct than *die Sträußer*), *Wald*, *Wicht* in *Böfewicht* (though here again *die Böfewichte* may be considered the more correct form of the two), *Wurm*.

Note 1 (*).—This word takes also the termination *en* in the plural *die Mannen*, but only in the sense of warriors or vassals. Compounds, of which the last component is *Mann*, substitute for the plural of the latter usually the plural collective noun *Leute*: e. g., *der Kaufmann* merchant, *die Kaufleute*; *der Fuhrmann* carter, carrier, *die Fuhrleute*; *der Hofmann* courtier, *die Hofleute*. However, where it is essential to mark the sex, or where it is intended to represent the persons designated rather individually than collectively, the form *Männer* must be retained: e. g., *Ehemänner* husbands, *Tochtermänner* sons-in-law, *Biedermänner* sterling upright men, patriots, *Ehrenmänner* honorable men, *Staatsmänner* statesmen, *Kriegsmänner* military men. *Leute* is a plural collective used to designate the species, without reference to individuality or sex: e. g., *Arbeitsleute* laborers, *Bergleute* miners, *Landleute* country people, *Hofleute* courtiers, &c. Compare, for instance, *die Ehemänner* husbands, and *die Eheleute* married people, persons joined in wedlock, &c.

Note 2 (†).—*Der Ort* place, has a double plural, viz., *die Orte* and *die Örter*; the former has a collective, the latter a disjunctive signification.

2. Dissyllables and Polysyllables.

a. The following neuters, with the prefix *Ge*: *das Gemach* (*die Gemache* is also sometimes used, but not so generally as *die Gemächer*), *Gemüth*, *Geschlecht* (*die Geschlechter* and *die Geschlechte*, the former used in preference to the latter), *Gesicht* (*die Gesichter* faces, countenances, *die Gesichte* apparitions, visions), *das Gewand* (*die Gewänder*, and in poetic language *die Gewande*).

b. All derivatives in *thum*: the vowel *u* of the termination is changed to *ü* in the plural.

3. A very limited number of foreign words: the principal four of them are, *das Capital* upper part of a pillar or column (the plural of this noun is, however, also frequently formed in *e*—*die Capitaller* and *die Capitüle*; the plural of *Capital* money, is formed in *ien*, *Capitalien*), *Hospital*, *Kamisol*, and *Regiment*.

Note.—The substantives belonging to this subdivision of the second form of the strong declension change the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in the plural, to *ä*, *ö*, *ü*.

B.

Nom.	} en-n
Gen.	
Dat.	
Acc.	

Die Staaten states or estates (plural of *der Staat*).

Nom.	die	} Staaten
Gen.	der	
Dat.	den	
Acc.	die	

Die Doctoren (plural of *der Doctor*).

Nom.	die	} Doctoren
Gen.	der	
Dat.	den	
Acc.	die	

The following substantives of the second form of the strong declension take *en* or *n* in the plural.

1. Masculines: *der Mast*, *Pfau* (*die Pfauen* is more generally used than *Pfaue*), *Schmerz*, *See*, *Staat*, *Strahl*, *Zierath* (we say, however, also *die Zierathe*), *Zins*.

2. Neuters: *das Auge*, *Bett* (though the termination in *e* is often used), *Ende*, *Ohr*, *Weh*.

3. A few foreign masculines and neuters: e. g., *der Consul*, *das Insect*, *das Statut*. And more particularly masculines terminating in the semi-accentuated syllable *or*: e. g., *der Cantor*, *Doctor*, *Pastor*, *Professor*, *Rector*; gen. sing., *des Cantors*, *Doctors*, &c.; plural, *die Doctoren*, *Cantoren*, &c. But foreign words, in which the termination *or* has the full accent, form the plural in *e*, without modification of the vowel *o*: e. g., *Castor*, *Elektrophor*, *Matador*, *Meteor*; plural, *die Castore*, *Elektrophore*, &c.

4. The following masculines take both *e* and *en* in the plural: *der*

Dorn, Forst, Gau, Halm, Pfau, Psalm, Sporn. The plurals *Dornen, Gauen, &c.*, are used more particularly in a collective sense. *Der Schacht* shaft, pit, forms the plural in *en*, in the Upper German dialect, but *die Schächte* is the more correct form; *die Truppe*, plural of *der Trupp* troop, has a disjunctive, *die Truppen* a collective signification.

The plural *die Thronen*, from *der Thron* throne, is not so correct as *die Throne*.

All the words belonging to this subdivision of the second form of the strong declension retain the vowels *a, o, u*, unaltered in the plural.

NOTES ON THE SECOND FORM OF THE STRONG DECLENSION.

1. The *e* is usually thrown out in the genitive and omitted in the dative sing. of words terminating in *and, at, end, icht, ig, ing, ling, rich, sal, thum*. The elision of the *e* in the genitive case is usual also in words terminating in a vowel or liquid: e. g., *des Ei's, Sees, Thaus, Strahls, Saums, Schwamms, Hahns, Jahrs, Kerns, Ohrs, &c.* Those terminating in a vowel reject the *e* likewise in the dative case: e. g., *dem Ei, See, Thau*. But those terminating in a liquid retain in the dative the regular termination in *e*: e. g., *dem Hahne, Strahle, Saume, Schwamme, Ohre*—unless the next word happens to commence with a vowel, in which case the *e* is dropped to avoid the hiatus. The word *Gott* takes invariably *es* in the genitive, but rejects the *e* in the dative.

The *e* ought to be retained in the genitive and dative after *b, d, t, ft, ch, g, k*; after *s, sch, ß, f*, and *z*, its elision or omission is altogether inadmissible, except in the dative case, if a word commencing with a vowel follows: e. g., *dem Geis ergeben* given to avarice (instead of *Geize*), *mit einem Glas* (instead of *Glafe*) *anstofen* to chink with a glass.

The *e* is also usually omitted in the dative after a preposition governing that case, if no article is interposed between the preposition and noun: e. g., *mit Weib und Kind, von Haus zu Haus, von Ort zu Ort, zu Fuß, zu Pferd, von Glas, aus Thon, vor Zorn, mit Dank, &c.* But, on the other hand, we say, *zu Lande, bei Tage, nach Tische, etwas zu Gelde machen, &c.* (not *zu Land, bei Tag, nach Tisch, zu Geld*).

2. The following nouns belonging to the regular section of the second form of the strong declension change the vowels *a, o, u*, to *ä, ö, ü*, in the plural.

a. Neuters: *das Chor* (a foreign word), *Floß, Rohr*.

b. Feminines: all the feminine monosyllables belonging (exceptionally) to this form.

c. Masculines.

A. The masculine monosyllables belonging to this form.

Exceptions.—*Der Aal, Aar* eagle (this noun belonged formerly to the weak declension), *Arm, Bau* structure, edifice, building, act of building or constructing (the plural form *die Baue* is rarely used, however; we generally say *die Bauten* instead, although the proper singular of the latter—*die Baute*—is never used), *Bord, Born, Deckt,*

Dolch, Dom, Dorn, Druck (but in compounds *Drücke*—e. g., *Abdrücke, Ausdrücke, Eindrücke*), *Flor* flourishing condition (but *der Flor gauze*, changes the *o* to *ö* in the plural), *Fuß* measure of twelve inches, plural *die Füße* (but *Fuß* foot, plural *die Füße*), *Grad, Hag, Hall, Halm, Hauch, Horst, Hort, Huf, Hund, Kalk, Karst, Kork, Krah, Lachs, Lack, Laut, Luchs, Molch, Mord, Ort, Park, Pfad, Pfau, Pol, Puls, Punkt, Punsch, Quarz, Quast, Ratz, Rost* rust (but the plural of *Rost* grate, is *Röste*), *Samm, Schuft, Schuh, Spat, Sporn, Stahr, Stoff, Sund, Takt, Tafft, Tag, Talk, Thran, Thron, Tod, Torf, Trupp, Tusch, Zoll* inch (but the plural of *Zoll* toll, is *Zölle*).

B. Dis- and poly-syllabic masculines, with the prefixes *be, emp, ent, er, ge, mis, un, ur, ver, zer*; and compounds, with the particles *ab, an, auf, aus, bei, ein, vor, über, unter, &c.*

Exceptions.—*Der Besuch, Versuch.*

c. Many of the foreign masculine nouns belonging to this form: e. g., *der Choral, die Choräle; der General, die Generale; der Bischof, die Bischöfe; der Palast, die Paläste, &c.* But *der Impost, die Imposte; der Kompaß, die Kompassse; der Küras, die Kürasse; der Patron, die Patrone, &c.*

The declension of one noun substantive, *das Herz* the heart, deviates in the singular from any of the preceding forms; this noun is declined as follows:—

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i>	das Herz	die
<i>Gen.</i>	des Herzens	der
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Herzen	den
<i>Acc.</i>	das Herz	die

} Herzen

ADDITIONAL REMARK.

I said, in the chapter on the gender, that, with comparatively few exceptions, the proper form of inflection of a noun may be known from its gender. An attentive perusal of the preceding rules will, I trust, suffice to satisfy the pupil of the truth of that remark, which, I deem it hardly necessary to add, was meant to apply more particularly to vernacular German and thoroughly Germanized foreign words. Thus, it will have been seen that, with the exception of a few easily remembered monosyllables, and the dis- and poly-syllabic words in *nis* and *sal*, together with two in *er*, all feminines are inflected after the weak declension, to which, on the other hand, belong comparatively few words of the masculine, and none at all of the neuter gender. The first form of the strong declension again embraces only dis- and poly-syllabic words of the masculine and neuter genders ending in a few easily remembered terminations. Finally, all monosyllables of the neuter, and the immense majority of those of the masculine gender, together with the great majority of the dis- and poly-syllabic words of both genders, are inflected after the second form of the strong declension.

DECLENSION OF INFINITIVES, ADJECTIVES, ETC., USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

Infinitives used substantively are declined according to the first form of the strong declension.

Adjectives used substantively retain their own form of inflection. (Vide Chapter iii.) Pronouns and particles, and the letters of the alphabet, used substantively, remain unaltered in the singular. The plural is usually (but not necessarily) formed by the addition of *s*, separated, however, by an apostrophe, from the pronoun or particle: e. g., *die Ja's, und Nein's; die A's, und U's; die Wenn's, und die Aber's, &c.*

DECLENSION OF NON-GERMANIZED FOREIGN WORDS.

I. Latin words that still retain their native form and termination add simply an *s* to the genitive case of the singular; the Latin nominative plural is maintained unaltered in the four cases of the plural number. (Words terminating in *s* add neither *s* nor an apostrophe in the genitive singular.)

EXAMPLES.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	der Muficus	die
<i>Gen.</i>	des Muficus	der
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Muficus	den
<i>Acc.</i>	den Muficus	die
		Mufici
<i>Nom.</i>	das Factum	die
<i>Gen.</i>	des Factums	der
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Factum	den
<i>Acc.</i>	das Factum	die
		Facta
<i>Nom.</i>	das Thema	die
<i>Gen.</i>	des Themas	der
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Thema	den
<i>Acc.</i>	das Thema	die
		Themata

Note.—Many Latin words in *um* have, however, become Germanized already in the plural, which they form mostly after the weak declension in *en*: e. g., *das Gymnasium, Adverbium, Evangelium, Individuum, Principium, Seminarium, Verbum, &c.*; plural *die Gymnasien, Adverbien, &c.* A few form their plural in *e*: e. g., *die Substantive, Adjective*. This latter plural, however, may be referred more properly to the abbreviated form *das Substantiv, Adjectiv*, than to the full form, *Substantivum, Adjectivum*. The same may be said of the plurals *die Nominative, Genitive, Infinitive, &c.*, which are derived from the abbreviated form, *Nominativ, Genitiv, &c.*, instead of *Nominativus, Genitivus, Infinitivus, &c.*

II. Foreign words taken unaltered from modern languages, more particularly from the French and English, add *s* to the genitive singular, with the exception of those of the feminine gender, which remain altogether unaltered in the singular. The plural is formed throughout by the addition of *s*.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i>	der	Chef, Pair, Maire, Lord, Pudding, Cicerone.
<i>Gen.</i>	des	Chefs, Pairs, Maires, Lords, Puddings, Cicerones.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem	} Chef, Pair, Maire, Lord, Pudding, Cicerone.
<i>Acc.</i>	den	

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	die	} Chefs, Pairs, Maires, Lords, Puddings, Cicerones.
<i>Gen.</i>	der	
<i>Dat.</i>	den	
<i>Acc.</i>	die	

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i>	das	Genie, Canapé, Pianoforte.
<i>Gen.</i>	des	Genies, Canapés, Pianofortes.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem	} Genie, Canapé, Pianoforte.
<i>Acc.</i>	das	

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	die	} Genies, Canapés, Pianofortes.
<i>Gen.</i>	der	
<i>Dat.</i>	den	
<i>Acc.</i>	die	

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i>	die	} Lady
<i>Gen.</i>	der	
<i>Dat.</i>	der	
<i>Acc.</i>	die	

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	die	} Ladys
<i>Gen.</i>	der	
<i>Dat.</i>	den	
<i>Acc.</i>	die	

Note.—Certain words of foreign origin or, at all events, of exotic appearance, and which terminate in a vowel, receive also *s* (with a preceding apostrophe) in the plural: e. g., *der Papa, Uhu, Kolibri, Kadi, &c.*; *das Motto, Sopha, &c.*; plural, *die Papa's, Uhu's, &c.*

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

I. Proper names requiring the use of the definite article, such as the names of nations, rivers, seas, mounts, mountains, forests, &c., and those few names of countries which are exceptionally of the masculine or feminine gender, are inflected like the common nouns: e. g., *der Spanier, Neckar, Po, Bodensee, Brocken, Harz, Westerwald, Rheingau, Peloponnes*; gen. *des Spaniers, Neckars, Po's, Bodensees, Brockens, Harzes, Westerwaldes* (or *Westerwalds*), *Rheingaus, Peloponneses*; dat. *dem Spanier, Neckar, Po, Bodensee, Brocken, Harze*, (or *Harz*), *Westerwalde* (or *Westerwald*), *Rheingau, Peloponnes* (or *Peloponnes*); der *Sachse, Franzose*; gen. *des*, dat. and acc. *dem, den Sachsen, Franzosen*.

Die Elbe, Weser, Donau, Schneekoppe, Mark, Lausitz; gen. and dat. *der Elbe, Weser, &c.*; acc. *die Elbe, Weser, &c.*

II. The names of towns, cities, villages, and those names of countries which are of the neuter gender, take simply the termination *s* in the genitive case, no matter whether accompanied by the article or not: e. g., *Berlins* Umgebungen*, *Hamburgs mildthätige Anstalten*, *Frankreichs Erzeugnisse*, *die Flüsse Deutschlands*, *der Beherrscher des weiten Rußlands*, *die Wälle des festen Magdeburgs*. The other cases remain unaltered: e. g., in *Deutschland*, *von dem schönen Frankreich*, &c.

Names of places ending in *s*, *z*, or *x*, remain altogether unaltered; the genitive case of such names is marked mostly by means of the preposition *von* of: e. g., *die Einwohner von Paris* the inhabitants of Paris, *der Hafen von Cadix* the harbour of Cadiz, *die Wälle von Mainz* the walls of Mentz. Or we have recourse to the aid of one of the appellatives *Stadt*, *Festung*, *Dorf*, &c., town, city, fortress, village, &c.: e. g., *die Einwohner der Stadt Grätz* the inhabitants of the town or city of Grätz; *die Lage der Festung Cadix* the position of the fortress of Cadiz, &c.

In all cases where the governing word stands *before* the name of a country or place, no matter what its termination, it is always more correct to designate the genitive case of the latter by means of the preposition *von* than by the addition of *s*: e. g., *die Entdeckung von Amerika* the discovery of America, is more correct than *die Entdeckung Amerika's*; *die Königin von England*, than *die Königin England's*; but we may say with perfect propriety *England's Königin*, because in this latter sentence the governing noun stands *after* the noun which it governs.

III. Proper names of persons, when accompanied by either the definite or indefinite article, remain altogether unaltered in the singular number: e. g.,

Nom.	der	} Cicero, Ludwig, Heyne, Lessing.
Gen.	des	
Dat.	dem	
Acc.	den	

Nom.	der gelehrte	} Grimm, Porfon, Neander, &c.
Gen.	des gelehrten	
Dat.	dem gelehrten	
Acc.	den gelehrten	

Nom.	die gute	} Bertha, Louise, Adelheid.
Gen.	der guten	
Dat.	der guten	
Acc.	die gute	

But if the genitive of the personal noun, accompanied by an adjective, precedes the governing word, 's is added: e. g., *des großen Friedrich's Thaten*, *des berühmten Wolf's Werke*.

* There is no need of an apostrophe between the *s* and the noun, except if latter ends in a vowel: e. g., *Breslau's Umgebungen*.

Note.—If the proper name of a male person is used as an appellative, to mark a whole genus or class of men, it takes the termination *s* or *'s* in the genitive, although accompanied by the article: e. g., *die Reden des Cicero's unserer Zeit* the oration of the Cicero of our time (age), *die Werke des Plato's unseres Jahrhunderts* the works of the Plato of our century, *unsere Zeit bedürfte eines Peels* our time requires (would require) a Peel.

IV. Proper names of persons, no matter whether male or female, unaccompanied by the article, take simply *s* or *'s* in the genitive singular, and remain unaltered in the dative and accusative: e. g., *Karls* Charles's, *Adams* Adam's, *Luthers* Luther's, *Eva's*, *Fanny's*. The same rule applies to the neuter diminutives: e. g., *Hänschens* little John's, *Lotischens* little Charlotte's.

Note.—The apostrophe before the *s* should be invariably used in the case of surnames (family names): e. g., *Schiller's*, *Goethe's*, *Lessing's*, *Schulze's Werke*, *Schiller's*, &c., *Works*. And also in the case of Christian and other names terminating in *a*, *o*, *i*, or *y*: e. g., *Cato's Tugend* Cato's virtue, *Fanny's Schönheit* Fanny's beauty, *Otto's Pferd* Otto's horse, *Minna's Thränen* Minna's tears.

Note.—Many grammarians except from this rule female names in *e*, and male names in *f*, *ff*, *sch*, *z*, for the formation of the genitive of which they prescribe the termination *ens*. Now, as regards family names, the adoption of this termination would simply lead to the utmost confusion and uncertainty as to the actual identity of the name. If I say, for instance, *Zinkens Wörterbuch*, I give no clue whatsoever that could enable anybody to determine whether the name of the author of the dictionary happens to be *Zink*, or *Zinke*, or *Zinken*, or *Zinkens*. In surnames (family names) this termination is, therefore, absolutely to be rejected, and *'s* to be used instead: e. g., *Voss's* or *Voss' Gedichte* Voss' Poems, *Jacobs's* or *Jacobs' Werke* Jacobs' Works.

If my own opinion could have any weight in this matter, I would reject the termination *ens* altogether, and use uniformly throughout *s* or *'s*. I cannot see any very valid reason why *Sophie's Kleid* Sophy's dress, should not sound as well as *Sophiens*, *Fritzs* as *Fritzens*. Yet I would, of course, advise the pupil to conform to the rule as laid down by those who are justly looked upon as authorities on the subject, and to write accordingly *Fritzens*, *Maxens*, *Felixens*, *Hansens*, *Frauens*, *Karolinens*, *Daphnens*, &c.

Ambiguities, that might possibly occur in the dative and accusative, may be readily avoided by the interposition of the article: e. g., the sentence *er zieht Goethe Schiller vor* might indeed leave the reader in doubt as to the poet preferred; but *er zieht Goethe dem Schiller vor* he prefers Göthe to Schiller, is perfectly clear. The following sentence, "*Nun geh der Hauptmann Alonzo den Rath, &c.*," does not tell us whether Alonzo is the name of the captain or of the person advised by the latter; the interposition of "*dem*" between *Hauptmann* and *Alonso*, makes the matter at once clear. Greek and Latin names of persons are best left unaltered in the singular, with the exception of the genitive case, to which *'s* is added; if the name happens to terminate in *s*, a simple apostrophe may or may not be added in the genitive: e. g., *Christus' Geburt* the birth of Christ, *von Christus reden* to speak of Christ, *Paulus Briefe* the Letters of Paul, *Salomo's Schriften* the Writings of Solomon, *Cicero's Reden* Cice-

Orations, *Phædrus Fabeln* the Fables of Phædrus, &c. Or recourse may be had also to the article: e. g., *die Briefe des Paulus, des Sophocles Tragödien, die Komödien des Plautus*. The same rule applies to female names: e. g., *der Doris Schönheit* the beauty of Doris, *der Phyllis Reize* the charms of Phyllis.

V. If one or several substantives (appellatives or also baptismal names) precede a surname, unaccompanied by the article, the surname alone is declined: e. g.,

Christian Fürchtegott Gellert's Fabeln the Fables of Christian Fear-god Gellert.

Doctor Martin Luther's Geburtstag the birthday of Dr. Martin Luther.

Friedrich von Schiller's Werke Frederick von Schiller's Works.

The same rule applies to baptismal names in the case of emperors, kings, popes, princes, &c.: e. g.,

Kaiser Joseph's Leben war zu kurz Emperor Joseph's life was too short.

If the baptismal name is followed by the preposition *von*, and the name of some place, castle, &c., the inflection is given to the baptismal name: e. g.,

Wolfram's von Eschenbach Lieder the Songs of Wolfram of Eschenbach.

Walther's von der Vogelweide Nachahmer the imitators of Walter of the Vogelweide.

Die Thaten Ulrich's von Lichtenstein the deeds of Ulrich of Lichtenstein.

VI. But if an appellative designating a title or dignity (or the word *Herr* Sir, Mister), and accompanied by the article, precedes the surname (or baptismal name, in the case of kings, &c.), the latter is not inflected: e. g.,

Die Thaten des Königs Friedrich des Zweiten.

Die Besitzungen des Grafen von Windheim.

Der Proceß des Advocaten Kirchhof.

Das Haus des Herrn Rosenthal.

Der Garten des Herrn Commerzienraths Bauer.

Des Kanzelredners Reinhard Tod.

Note.—The use of the titular epithet *Herr* is admissible only before proper names of persons, and before denominations denoting some dignity or office: e. g., *Herr Müller, der Herr Graf, der Herr Rath, Secretär, Amtmann*, &c. Expressions like *der Herr Maler Rell* Mr. Painter Rell, *die Herren Gerichtspersonen, die Herren Mitglieder*, are most incorrect.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF PROPER NAMES.

1. The names of male persons in *a*, *e*, *i*, *el*, *en*, and *er*, and the neuter diminutives in *chen*, remain unaltered in the plural, with the exception of the dative, of course, which invariably ends in *n*.

Note.—Foreign names in *s* remain altogether unaltered in the plural: e. g., *die Sokrates, Sophokles, Demosthenes, Plautus*; gen., dat., acc., der, dem, die *Sokrates*, &c.

2. German names of male persons ending in any other letter or syllable than those enumerated sub. 1, form their plural in *e*; foreign names in *on* and *am*, and those in *o*, form their plural in *ne* (sometimes, but certainly less correctly, in *nen*): e. g., *die Ludwige, Adolphe, Wolfe, Salzmann, Priams, Melanchthone, Cicerone, Scipione, Ottos*; dat. *den Ludwigen, Adolphen, &c.*

3. The names of female persons take in the plural invariably *en* or *n*; and after *a* and *y*, *n*: e. g., *die Adelheiden, Agnesen, Ida'n, Minna'n, Fanny'n.*

4. In conversational language surnames or family names form also a distinct plural in *'s*, which serves to designate an assemblage of several or of the whole of the members of the same family: e. g., *die Salzmann's sind hier* the family Salzmann is here (it is, however, after all, more correct to say, *die Salzmann'sche Familie*), *Müller's haben Besuch* the family Müller have visitors, &c.

Note.—Mark the difference between *die Adelnung's*, persons of the name of Adelnung, members of the family of Adelnung, and *die Adelnunge* men like Adelnung.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

No proper name changes the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in the plural. The genitive plural of proper names cannot be used without the article.

GOVERNMENT OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

The English language, having no inflective form of declension, expresses mostly through prepositions the various relations of grammatical dependence in which a noun substantive (or other part of speech used in the capacity of a substantive) may stand to another noun substantive (or other part of speech used substantively), or to an adjective, or to a verb; and as regards the accusative, and in many instances also the dative case, we are left to infer the nature of the relation of dependence from the syntactic order: i. e., from the position which the governed word occupies in the sentence, or from the sense and meaning of the latter.

In the German language the case is somewhat different; at all events, as regards the genitive and dative singular of masculines and neuters, the accusative singular of masculines, and the genitive and dative plural of the three genders;* these cases being marked respectively with sufficient distinctness by the different inflections of the article, and the genitive singular of masculines and neuters of the strong declension, moreover, by the inflection *s*, the dative plural by the final *n*.†

The German language is accordingly in a position to indicate, simply by the proper dependent case, and without the intervention

* The accusative singular of feminines and neuters, and the accusative plural of the three genders, terminating like their respective nominatives, we are left, with regard to these cases, in the same position in German as in English; which remark applies, of course, also to the genitive and dative singular of feminines.

† Of course, this latter mark of guidance is not available in the case of words ending already in the nominative plural in *n*.

of a preposition, the various respective relations of the *direct* and *immediate* grammatical dependence in which one word may happen to stand to another; and of this faculty we avail ourselves in German largely, but not *absolutely* and *exclusively*.

I deem it necessary, therefore, to give a few plain rules, to show the English student where the intervention of a preposition *is* or *is not* admissible or required, and also to guide him in the selection of the proper dependent case in all instances where this intervention *may* or *must* be dispensed with.

We have to occupy ourselves here, in the first place, simply with the government of the substantive; that of the adjective and of the verb will be treated of in the respective chapters on those parts of speech.

Substantives can govern the *genitive* case alone, and neither the *dative** nor the *accusative*. The rule would accordingly seem to be very simple here: viz., wherever two substantives are joined, of which the one is grammatically dependent on the other, the dependent substantive is put in the genitive case.

But, as has been intimated already, the German language has frequently recourse also to prepositions, to express relations even of direct grammatical dependence, such as are usually expressed by the proper case simply; and thus it will frequently happen, also, that a preposition with its proper case is substituted for the adnominal genitive; in some cases this substitution is simply facultative, in others it is absolutely necessary.

The nature and limits of a work like the present will not admit of an elaborate treatise on the conditions and circumstances by which the respective choice of the adnominal genitive or the prepositive construction is governed, and we must, therefore, confine ourselves here to the most general and necessary rules on the subject.

I think it will facilitate the matter if we distinguish between the four principal significations of the adnominal genitive. We shall accordingly assume here four kinds of adnominal genitives: viz., 1, the partitive genitive; 2, the material or qualitative; 3, the possessive; 4, the genitive of the object. The respective denominations selected here for the several classes of adnominal genitives will, I trust, prove sufficiently comprehensible for the intelligent student to render a definition of them unnecessary.

1. The *partitive genitive* dependent upon numerals, superlatives or comparatives, and pronouns, is often replaced by the preposition *von*, or, in some instances, also *unter* or *aus*, followed by the proper case which these prepositions respectively govern.

After the pronouns *derjenige* or *der*, *wer*, *welcher*, *Jemand*, *Nie-*

* The dative, which we find sometimes *apparently* governed by substantives like *Nachbar*, *Nächster*, *Verwandter*, *Helfer*, *Gehülfe*, *Beistand*, *Rathgeber*, *Freund*, *Gefährte*, *Genosse*, &c. (e. g., *Jeder ist sich selbst der Nächste*; *er ist mir ein guter Nachbar*, &c.) may be regarded more properly in the light of a *dativus commodi* or *possessivus*, and, as such, as a complemental part of the sentence, not *dependent* on any particular word in it.

mand, and after the indefinite numerals, the prepositive construction is *invariably* used in lieu of the partitive genitive of the personal and demonstrative pronouns, and of the indefinite numerals. Accordingly, we do not say *derjenige unser, wer or welcher euer*, but *derjenige von or unter uns, wer or welcher von euch*; not *Jemand dieser, Niemand Aller, jeder ihrer*, &c., but *Jemand von diesen, Niemand von Allen, jeder von ihnen*, &c.

2. The *qualitative* or *material* adnominal genitive is employed rarely now, and mostly in the more elevated style only: e. g., *Stufen Erzes, Barren Goldes, ein Mann hohes Muthes*, &c. The prepositive construction with *von* or *aus* is mostly substituted for it; or the substantive which designates the matter or quality of the governing noun is changed to an attributive adjective: e. g., *ein goldener Ring, ein seidenes Kleid*, &c., (instead of *ein Ring von Gold, ein Kleid von Seide*, &c.). Or, finally, the two substantives are formed into a compound, in which the noun designating the matter or quality occupies the first place as determinative: e. g., *Erzstufen, Goldbarren, ein Marmortisch*, &c.

3. With regard to the *possessive genitive* and the *genitive of the object*, the substitution of the prepositive construction is permissible only—

a. In the case of names of *countries* and *places*, more particularly of such as are *indeclinable*: e. g., *die Bevölkerung von Paris*, &c. But also *der König von Preussen, der König von Bayern*, &c. (See Declension of Proper Names.)

b. In the case of *numerals* having no distinct genitive inflection, and standing *unaccompanied by the article*: e. g., *die Frucht von dreißig Kriegesjahren*, &c.

c. In the case of *substantives in the plural*, and *unaccompanied by the article*: e. g., *Blätter von Blumen, das Lesen von Büchern*, &c.

d. To avoid a consecutive sequence of several genitives, the prepositive construction with *von* is generally substituted for one of the genitives: e. g., *die Geschichte von der Erbauung der Stadt*, &c.

e. In cases where it is wished to discriminate clearly and distinctly between the *author* of an object and its *actual* or *ideal possessor*: e. g., *ein Bildniß von Raphael* a painting by Raphael, *ein Bildniß Raphael's* a painting belonging to Raphael, or a likeness of Raphael; also where the title of a work precedes the name of its author.

4. The possessive genitive designating the relation of a *whole* to its *parts*, is better replaced by the preposition *von*, if the parts are represented as *separated* from the whole, or as derived from the whole, and no longer in connection with it: e. g., *die Blüten von dem Apfelbaume liegen auf der Erde; die Knochen von dem Schafe werden zu Leim gesotten*, &c.

The possessive genitive or the equivalent possessive pronoun is used also rather to designate a *still continuing* connection between two persons or things; whereas the prepositive construction with *von* is employed to designate an association that has already been *severed*: e. g., *er ist mein Schüler* he is my pupil, i. e., he is taking lessons of me; *er ist ein Schüler von mir* he is a pupil of mine, i. e., he has been taught by me.

CHAPTER II.

THE PRONOUN.

The pronouns are divided into six classes : viz.,

1. Personal pronouns.
2. Possessive pronouns.
3. Demonstrative pronouns.
4. Determinative pronouns.
5. Interrogative pronouns.
6. Relative pronouns.

Pronouns are also divided into *substantive* and *adjective* pronouns. The *personal* pronouns, and the *interrogative* and *relative* pronouns *wer*, *was*, are invariably *substantive*; the possessive pronouns invariably *adjective*. All the other pronouns (*demonstrative*, *determinative*, *interrogative*, and *relative*, with the exception of *wer* and *was*), are used both as substantive and adjective pronouns.

SECT. I.—PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns are subdivided into two classes : viz., *definite* and *indefinite* personal pronouns.

a. DEFINITE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

First Person, for the Three Genders.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>ich</i> I [me]	Nom. <i>wir</i> we
Gen. <i>meiner (mein)</i> mine, of	Gen. <i>unser</i> ours, of us
Dat. <i>mir</i> to me, me	Dat. <i>uns</i> to us, us
Acc. <i>mich</i> me	Acc. <i>uns</i> us

Second Person, for the Three Genders.

Nom. <i>du</i> thou [thee]	Nom. <i>ihr</i> you
Gen. <i>deiner (dein)</i> thine, of	Gen. <i>euer</i> yours, of you
Dat. <i>dir</i> to thee, thee	Dat. <i>euch</i> to you, you
Acc. <i>dich</i> thee	Acc. <i>euch</i> you

Pronoun of polite Address.

Nom.	<i>Sie</i> you
Gen.	<i>Ihrer</i> yours, of you
Dat.	<i>Ihnen</i> to you, you
Acc.	<i>Sie</i> you

*Third Person Singular.**Masculine.*

Nom.	<i>er</i> he
Gen.	<i>seiner</i> (<i>sein</i>) his, of him
Dat.	<i>ihm</i> to him, him
Acc.	<i>ihn</i> him

Feminine.

Nom.	<i>sie</i> she
Gen.	<i>ihrer</i> hers, of her
Dat.	<i>ihr</i> to her, her
Acc.	<i>sie</i> she

Neuter

Nom.	<i>es</i> it
Gen.	<i>seiner</i> (<i>sein</i>) its, of it
Dat.	<i>ihm</i> to it, it
Acc.	<i>es</i> it

Plural for the Three Genders.

Nom.	<i>sie</i> they
Gen.	<i>ihrer</i> theirs, of them
Dat.	<i>ihnen</i> to them, them
Acc.	<i>sie</i> they

REMARKS ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The genitives *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, are obsolete; they are used, however, occasionally by poets, and occur still in a few expressions like the following: *vergiss mein nicht* forget me not, *dein gedenk 'ich*, *man spottet sein*, &c. The genitive *ihr* (instead of *ihrer*) is altogether obsolete. *Mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*, are frequently used, however, in combination with the prepositions *halben*, *wegen*, and *willen*, the syllable *et* being inserted between the pronoun and preposition: e. g., *meinet-halben*, *ihrerwegen*, &c. *Unser* and *euer* form similar compounds with these prepositions, only that in their case the conjunction is effected by the insertion of a simple *t*: e. g., *unsertwegen*, *um unsertwillen*, *euerthalben*, &c.

2. The genitives *unser*, *euer*, must not be confounded with *unfrer*, *eurer*, which are the genitives of the possessive pronouns *unser*, *euer*. Accordingly, say not *unfrer einer*, *er spottet unfrer*, *er ist eurer würdig*; but say *unser einer* one of us, or one among us, *er spottet unser*, *er ist euer würdig*, &c. But the possessive pronoun must be used, of course, in sentences like the following: *er spottet unfrer Freunde*, *ich gedenke eurer Verdienste*, &c.

3. The datives *mir*, *Dir*, *Ihnen*, *Euch*, are frequently used without grammatical necessity, and for the purpose simply of imparting a higher degree of vividness to the speech: e. g., *da lobe ich mir die Magyaren*; *das waren Ihnen wahre Helden*! *das soll Dir eine Lust werden*! *das will ich mir doch ansehen*, &c. These sentences would have exactly the same meaning, even though the pronouns *mir*, *Dir*,

Ihnen were omitted; their insertion here simply serves to establish a closer and more vivid relation between the objective statement of the sentence and the person speaking or spoken to.

4. The dative of the personal and reflexive pronoun, with an article or numeral adjective before the object of the sentence, is used in German instead of the possessive pronoun, in all cases where the object stands in a more or less direct relation to the person speaking, spoken of, or spoken to: e. g., *ich habe mir die Hand verwundet* I have wounded my hand, *Du hast Dir den Fuß verrenkt* thou hast sprained thy ankle, *er hat sich aus Unvorsichtigkeit zwei Finger abgeschossen* he has shot two of his fingers off through carelessness, *ich habe ihm die Börse in die Hand gegeben* I have put the purse into his hand, &c.

5. The second person singular is used in German in addressing God; and between children, husband and wife, parents and children, brothers and sisters; and also between intimate friends; in the language of poetry; from master to servant; and as a mark of disdain or contempt. The second person plural is used under the same circumstances in addressing several persons. Formerly the second person plural, and the masculine and feminine of the third person singular, were frequently used in addressing inferiors; this ridiculous and offensive mode of address is, however, fast growing out of use. The third person plural is used as the pronoun of polite address, and corresponds accordingly to the English *you, your*.

6. The indeclinable words *selbst* (*selber*) self, and *allein* alone, are frequently added to the personal pronouns, by way of laying greater stress on the latter: e. g., *ich selbst habe ihn gebeten* I myself have intreated him, *Du allein fehltest in der Gesellschaft*, &c.

Note.—The indeclinable word *selbst* is sometimes used in conjunction with numerals: e. g., *ich selbstvierter* (*selbvierter*), *selbstfünfter* (*selbfünfter*)—I and three others, I and four others. It is used also in conjunction with the demonstrative adverb *da* there, and with the preposition *von* of, from: e. g., *da selbst* there, at that same place, in that same spot; *von selbst* of itself, voluntarily, spontaneously, of his, her, or its own accord. Finally, it is used also as an adverb, with the signification *even*: e. g., *selbst sein Bruder haßt ihn* even his brother hates him.

7. The personal and all other substantive pronouns agree, of course, in gender, number, and case, with the person which they represent, or to which they refer. In cases, however, where the personal pronouns refer to persons of the male or female sex, but which, grammatically, have assigned to them the neuter gender, for some reason or other (diminutives and words like *Weib*, *Frauenzimmer*), the pronoun agrees with the natural sex, without regard to the grammatical gender of the noun: e. g., *was macht Ihr Söhnchen? ist er noch krank?*—how is your little son? is he still ill? But in cases where the sex of the person represented or referred to is undecided, the pronoun agrees with the grammatical gender of the noun: e. g., *ist Ihr Kind noch? nein, es starb gestern*—is your child still alive? *it died yesterday*.

8. The personal pronouns of the first and second person, and also the third person singular (*Er, Sie*), and the third person plural (*Sie*), when used in allocution, are repeated after the relative pronouns *der, die*: e. g., *ich, der ich es so gut mit Dir meine* I who am so kindly disposed towards thee; *Du, der Du so wenig verstehst* thou who understandest so little; *wir, die wir von Allen verlassen sind* we who are abandoned by all; *Sie, der Sie mir so oft versprochen haben* you who have so often promised me; *Sie, die Sie mich zu lieben vorgeben* you who pretend to love me. The second pronoun may be omitted, however; but in that case the verb must be put in the third person: e. g., *ich, der es so gut mit Dir meint*; *Du, der so wenig versteht*, &c.

9. The pronoun *es* it, is used also indefinitely before impersonal (unipersonal) verbs: e. g., *es regnet* it rains, *es blitzt*, &c.

Note.—With transitive verbs (*es freut mich*, it rejoices me, &c.) the *es* appears rather as the representative of some antecedent, or of something which follows immediately after in the form of a sentence: e. g., *es freut mich, Dich gesund zu sehen*. In sentences of this kind the pronoun *es* may be omitted: e. g., *mich freut, Dich zu sehen*, I am glad to see thee.

In certain sentences *es* is employed to usher in the subject, or simply for the sake of euphony: e. g., *es ist ein Gott*, instead of *ein Gott ist*; *es ist die Rede von meinem Bruder*, instead of *die Rede ist von meinem Bruder*, &c. The use of the *es* in such sentences is admissible only if the verb precedes its nominative case; in sentences where the nominative precedes the verb the *es* cannot stand: e. g., *ich weiß, daß die Rede von meinem Bruder ist*, not *daß es die Rede*, &c.

Es, and the neuter demonstrative pronouns *das* and *dieses* (*dies*), are frequently used as a species of vague and indefinite subject, alluding simply in a general manner, and without reference to gender or number, to the person or thing denominated in the predicate: e. g., *es ist mein Vater*, *es war meine Mutter* it is my father, it was my mother; *es sind Fremde*; *das ist mein Bruder und dies ist meine Schwester*; *das (dies) sind die Kinder* these are the children, &c.

The German locution *es giebt* corresponds to the English *there is* and *there are*: e. g., *es giebt kein Mittel gegen diese Krankheit* there is no remedy for (against) this disease; *es giebt auch gute Menschen*, there are also (some) good people.

10. If *es* happens to stand after another word, more particularly after a monosyllable, the *e* is often elided, and replaced by an apostrophe: e. g., *ich glaub's*; *wie geht's*? *Wenn Du's nicht willst, so will ich's*, &c.

11. The determinative and demonstrative pronouns *derselbe, dieselbe, daselbe*; *dieser, diese, dieses*; *dessen, deren*, &c., are frequently used in lieu of the personal and possessive pronouns of the third person, *er, sie, es*, and *sein, ihr*, when referring to an antecedent substantive. In some cases this is a mere matter of choice: e. g., *Die Mutter liebt ihren Sohn, sie hat ihn* (or *denselben*) *daher von der Militärflicht frei gemacht und ihm* (or *demselben*) *einen Stellvertreter*

gekauft. In others, the laws of euphony must be consulted; thus, for instance, it would not sound very well were we to say, *er hat eine Schwester, kennen Sie sie?* it is preferable, therefore, to say, *kennen Sie dieselbe*. On the other hand, it would not be very elegant to say, *nein, ich kenne weder dieselbe, noch den Vater derselben*; here we would prefer saying, *ich kenne weder sie, noch ihren Vater*. In the same way, the sentence *dieser Wein ist gut, ich kann Ihnen denselben empfehlen*, is preferable to *ich kann ihn Ihnen empfehlen*.

In cases where the pronouns refer to several persons or things of the same gender, all ambiguity may be avoided by using *er, sie, es, sein, ihr, &c.*, in referring to the *subject* of the sentence; *derselbe, dieser, dessen, deren*, in referring to the *object* or to the other persons or things mentioned in the sentence: e. g., *Der König ist gegen den Mann sehr gnädig gewesen; denn er hat dem Sohne desselben* (not *seinem Sohne*) *ein gutes Amt verliehen. Der Vater liebt seinen Sohn; aber derselbe* or *dieser* (not *er*) *weiß ihm dafür keinen Dank. Die Mutter kam mit ihrer Tochter hierher, um ihre Angelegenheiten in Ordnung zu bringen* the mother came here with her daughter in order to arrange her affairs—i. e., her own affairs; *um deren Angelegenheiten in Ordnung zu bringen* to arrange the affairs of the latter—i. e., the affairs of the daughter, &c.

If a sentence contains, besides the subject, two substantives, both represented in the following sentence by pronouns, *dieser* is selected to represent that one of the substantives which passes into the nominative case, *derselbe* is made to represent the other: e. g., *der Herr nahm dem Bedienten das Geld wieder ab, weil dieser ihm daselbe gestohlen hatte* the master took the money away again from the servant, because the latter had robbed him of it; *weil ihm dieses von demselben gestohlen worden war* because it had been stolen from him by the latter.

In all cases where the possessive pronouns refer to inanimate things, the genitives of the determinative and demonstrative pronouns (*deselben, derselben; dessen, deren*) should be substituted for *sein* and *ihr*: e. g., *Man hat mir dieses Buch sehr gerühmt, aber ich finde den Werth desselben, or dessen Werth* (not *seinen Werth*, which, although no positive fault, would be decidedly less correct here than *deselben* or *dessen*) *dem Rufe nicht entsprechend*.

The datives *ihm, ihr*, are also usually employed only in reference to actual male or female persons; the dative of the determinative pronoun (*demselben, derselben*), or the corresponding compound of the pronominal adverb *da*, with a preposition governing the dative, ought to be used instead of *ihm, ihr*, in all cases where the pronoun refers to an inanimate thing or to an abstract noun: e. g., *das Messer ist scharf, Du kannst Dich leicht mit demselben, or damit, schneiden; ich habe einen schönen Garten und halte mich gern darin, or in demselben, auf, &c.*

The pronoun *es* is invariably unaccentuated; were it placed after a preposition, a tone would unavoidably be given to it utterly at variance with its nature as an unaccentuated word; to avoid this, we substitute for the personal pronoun *es* after a preposition, the determina-

tive pronoun *daselbe* or the corresponding compound of the pronominal adverb *da* with the preposition: e. g., *Das Glück kommt oft am wenigsten, wenn man sich um daselbe, or darum, bemüht, &c.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

First and Second Persons.

The genitive, dative, and accusative cases of the personal pronoun serve equally for the same cases of the reflexive pronoun, with the exception, however, of the dative and accusative of the pronoun of polite address, which take the reflexive of the third person, *sich*, or more correctly, particularly in letters, *Sich*.

Note.—Where the reflexive pronoun of the first or the second person is used with verbs not in themselves essentially reflexive, the word *selbst* self, is usually added to the pronoun, to mark more clearly and strongly its reflexive signification: e. g., *Du lobst dich selbst* thou praisest thyself, *du schonst deiner selbst nicht*; *ich habe mich selbst betrogen*; *ich verdanke es mir selbst, &c.*

Third Person.

The word *sich* serves as a reflexive pronoun for the dative and accusative cases of the third person (masculine, feminine, and neuter genders; singular and plural numbers).

The respective genitive cases of the third person of the personal pronoun serve equally for the corresponding genitives of the third person of the reflexive pronoun; for the sake of greater distinctness and precision, however, the word *selbst* is usually added to them: e. g., *er schont seiner selbst nicht*; *sie schämte sich ihrer selbst, &c.*

RECIPROCAL PRONOUN.

The indeclinable reciprocal pronoun *einander* one another, expresses the mutualness or reciprocity of the acts of two or several persons: e. g., *wir lieben einander* we love one another, *sie schmeicheln einander* they flatter one another, &c.

Einander is often conjoined with prepositions, such as *an, auf, bei, durch, für, mit, nach, neben, unter, über, von, &c.*: e. g., *sie saßen neben einander* they sat side by side; *sie gingen mit einander fort* they went away together; *in einander mischen, unter einander mischen* to mix together, to intermix; *wir schreiben an einander* we write to one another.

The pronouns *uns, euch, sich*, should be added to *einander* only when the latter, dependent upon a preposition, stands after a verb used reflexively: e. g., *sie zankten sich mit einander* they quarreled with one another, *trennt euch von einander* separate from one another, &c.

Uns, euch, sich, may sometimes be substituted for *einander* where the substitution is not likely to give rise to ambiguity or obscurity: e. g., *Wir wollen uns* (instead of *einander*) *lieben wie Brüder* we will love one another as brethren, like brothers; *liebt euch* (instead of *einander*), *sie lieben sich* (instead of *einander*), *wie Brüder, &c.*

But this substitution is altogether inadmissible wherever it may lead to the slightest ambiguity: e. g., *Wir waren mit einander* (not *uns*) *stets zufrieden* we were always satisfied with one another; *zankt euch nicht mit einander* (not *euch*); *sie waren jederzeit mit einander* (not *sich*) *einig*; *beide Männer waren, da sie einander* (not *sich*, which, to say the least of it, would be less correct here than *einander*) *lange nicht gesehen hatten, einander* (or *sich*) *völlig fremd geworden*, &c.

b. INDEFINITE PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

1. *Jemand* some one, somebody, *Niemand* no one, nobody, represent persons of either sex, and take in the genitive case *s*. In the dative and accusative they should be left unaltered, unless, indeed, the sentence should be rendered ambiguous thereby, in which case the adjective termination *en* may be added: e. g., *mein Herz kennt Jemanden* my heart knows somebody; *mein Herz kennt Jemand* would here be ambiguous, and might equally mean, somebody knows my heart.

2. *Jedermann* every one, everybody, represents a person of either sex, and takes *s* in the genitive; the dative and accusative remain unaltered.

3. *Einer, eine, eines*, one (gen. *eines, einer, eines*; dat. *einem, einer, einem*; acc. *einen, eine, eines*) is used as an indefinite pronoun, not only in reference to persons, but also to things; it serves to represent the name of an individual but indeterminate object denominated already in a preceding sentence: e. g., *leihe mir einen Thaler*; *hier ist einer*—lend me a dollar; here is one: *ich habe kein Buch*; *hast Du eines?* It serves also to point out among a number of objects of the same denomination some individual one: e. g., *einer meiner Freunde* one of my friends, *eine von diesen Federn* one of these pens, &c.

4. *Man* one, they, people, is only used in the nominative, and with the singular of the verb. To form the other cases, recourse is had to the preceding indefinite pronoun *einer*: *was man gern thut, das wird einem leicht*, a willing mind makes work easy (literally, what one does willingly is easy to one). However, in many instances, the other cases of *man* may be expressed by the pronoun *wir* we: e. g., *Wenn etwas ins Stocken geräth, so weiß man immer nicht, ob die Schuld an uns, oder an der Sache liegt*.

5. *Etwas* something, and *nichts* nothing, are absolutely indeclinable.

Note.—Used in connection with a collective noun, or with a noun of matter, *etwas* is no longer an indefinite pronoun, but an indefinite numeral; just as, on the other hand, the indefinite numerals *einige* some, *etliche* some, several, *mancher* many a one, *keiner* no one, nobody, *jeder* every one, everybody, often assume the character of indefinite pronouns: e. g., *Einige behaupten*, &c., some maintain, &c.; *Mancher denkt*, &c., many a one thinks, &c.; *Keiner will es glauben* nobody will believe it.

SECT. II.—POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are formed from the genitive cases singular and plural of the personal pronouns: they are—

A. ATTRIBUTIVE FORM.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	
1st person singular.	<i>mein</i>	<i>meine</i>	<i>mein</i>	my
2nd _____	<i>dein</i>	<i>deine</i>	<i>dein</i>	thy
3rd _____	mas. <i>sein</i>	<i>seine</i>	<i>sein</i>	his
— _____	fem. <i>ihr</i>	<i>ihre</i>	<i>ihr</i>	her
— _____	neut. <i>sein</i>	<i>seine</i>	<i>sein</i>	its
1st person plural	<i>unser</i>	<i>unsere</i>	<i>unser</i>	our
2nd _____	<i>euer</i>	<i>euer</i> or <i>eure</i>	<i>euer</i>	your
3rd _____	<i>ihr</i>	<i>ihre</i>	<i>ihr</i>	their
Pronoun of polite address	<i>Ihr</i>	<i>Ihre</i>	<i>Ihr</i>	your

In the singular they are inflected like the indefinite article; in the plural they take the terminations of the strong declension of the adjective; viz.,

Nom.	—e
Gen.	—er
Dat.	—en
Acc.	—e

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mein Dolch</i> <i>my dagger</i>	<i>meine Büchse</i> <i>my rifle</i>	<i>mein Messer</i> <i>my knife</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meines Dolches</i>	<i>meiner Büchse</i>	<i>meines Messers</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>meinem Dolche</i>	<i>meiner Büchse</i>	<i>meinem Messer</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>meinen Dolch</i>	<i>meine Büchse</i>	<i>mein Messer</i>

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>meine Dolche</i>	<i>Büchsen</i>	<i>Messer</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meiner Dolche</i>	<i>Büchsen</i>	<i>Messer</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>meinen Dolchen</i>	<i>Büchsen</i>	<i>Messern</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>meine Dolche</i>	<i>Büchsen</i>	<i>Messer</i>

b. PREDICATIVE FORM.

1st person singular	<i>mein</i>	mine
2nd _____	<i>dein</i>	thine
3rd _____	mas. <i>sein</i>	his
— _____	fem. <i>ihr</i>	hers
— _____	neut. <i>sein</i>	its (not used in English in this form)
1st person plural	<i>unser</i>	ours
2nd _____	<i>euer</i>	yours
3rd _____	<i>ihr</i>	theirs
Pronoun of polite address	<i>Ihr</i>	yours

This form is not inflected: e. g., *der Hut ist mein* the hat is mine, *Dein ist die Ehre* thine is the honor, *sie ist mein* she is mine, *der Sieg ist euer* the victory is yours, &c.

This form is, however, employed only in sentences where the possessive pronoun stands in direct grammatical connection with a substantive or a definite pronoun, as is the case in the preceding examples. But when this direct connection does not exist, and the possessive pronoun refers simply to a substantive or pronoun, and more particularly after the pronoun *es* used in its indefinite capacity, the possessive pronoun takes the distinctive inflection for the three genders: viz., *er* in the masculine, *es* the the feminine, *es* in the neuter: e. g.,

meiner	meine	meines
unserer	unfere	unferes
or unfre	or unfre	or unfres, &c.

E. g., *Wem gehört der Hut—die Feder—das Buch?* *Es ist meiner—meins—meines*; or *er* (i. e., *der Hut*) *ist mein—sie* (i. e., *die Feder*) *ist mein—es* (i. e., *das Buch*) *ist mein*. *Ist das Ihr Regenschirm, oder ist es unserer?* Sentences like *der Hut ist meiner, die Feder ist meine, &c.*, are decidedly ungrammatical; nor can we say in German *das Buch (der Hut, die Feder, &c.) gehört mein, dein, &c.*; we must say *das Buch, &c., gehört mir, dir, &c.*

Instead of *meiner, meine, meines; deiner, deine, deines; Ihrer, Ihre, Ihres; unfre, unfre, unfres, &c.*, we say also *der, die, das meine or meinige, deine or deinige, Ihre or Ihrige, unfre or unfreige, &c.*

These two forms require invariably the definite article before them, and have never a substantive following them, but either refer like *meiner, meine, meines*, to a substantive or pronoun preceding: e. g., *Dein Bruder ist mit dem meinigen ausgegangen* thy brother is gone out with mine. Or they stand themselves in the capacity of substantives, in which case they are written with capital initials: e. g., *Du hast das Deinige gethan, sei darum zufrieden und laß auch Andere das Ihrige thun!* Thou hast done thy part; be content therefore, and let others (also) do (perform) their share (too)! *Du Meinigen lassen sich Ihnen und den Ihrigen empfehlen* many compliments from my family to you and yours, *gieb Jedem das Seinige* give to every one his own, *ganz der Ihrige* entirely yours, &c.

The form *der (die, das) Meine, Deine, &c.*, belongs more to the province of poetry, and to an elevated style of writing or oratory. Both forms are inflected after the weak declension of adjectives: e. g.,

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i>	der, die, das	meine or meinige
<i>Gen.</i>	des, der, des	meinen or meinigen
<i>Dat.</i>	dem, der, dem	meinen or meinigen
<i>Acc.</i>	den	meinen or meinigen, die, das meine or meinige

Plural.

Nom.	die	} meinen or meinigen
Gen.	der	
Dat.	dem	
Acc.	die	

OBSERVATIONS.

The adjective *eigen* own, is often added to the possessive pronoun to mark the possession still more emphatically: e. g., *mein* *Haus* my own house, *sein eigener Bruder* his own brother, &c. In the several forms and cases of *unser* and *euer* the *e* may be run out before the *r*: e. g., *unfres, unfrem, unfren*, (also *unfers, m, unfern*), *unfser*, &c.

Regarding the repetition or non-repetition of the possessive, or of other of the adjective pronouns, before several successive substantives, the rules laid down in this respect for the article (vide 22, x.), apply equally to the pronoun.

The English use the possessive pronoun in certain idiomatic cases: for instance, *he is a friend of mine; she is an acquaintance of ours*. In German we use the personal pronoun in sentences of this kind, and say accordingly, *er ist ein Freund von mir; sie ist Bekannte von uns*.

The Germans use the definite article instead of the possessive pronoun in sentences where no doubt or ambiguity exists relative to the person in whom the possession lies: e. g., *ich steckte das in die Tasche* I put the money into my pocket, *er hatte ein Messer in der Hand* he had a knife in his hand, *er trägt einen Turban auf dem Kopfe* he wears a turban on his head, &c.

In addressing persons of distinction, or speaking of them, the German language uses still (in letters, &c.):

Eure, abbreviated *Ew.*, and *Ihre* your: e. g., *Ew. Excellenz*, &c.; *Majestät*.

Seine, abbreviated *Se.* and *Sr.* (gen. and dat.) His (of His, to Him): e. g., *Se Majestät, der König der Frösche; Ich habe bei Sr. Majestät, dem Herzog Humfried zu Mittag gespeist*.

Ihre Her, and *Ihre* Their: e. g., *Ihre Majestät, die Königin von Tahiti; Ihre Majestäten, der König und die Königin der Spanier*, &c.

SECT. III.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The German language has two demonstrative pronouns; *dieser* this one, the latter; and *jener* that, that one, the former. In the substantive capacity both correspond to the English personal pronouns *he, she, it*, and are translated accordingly (compare also the Appendix on the personal pronoun).

Singular.

MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.			
n. dieser	diese	dieses (dies)	jener	jene	jenes
u. dieses	dieser	dieses	jenes	jener	jenes
i. diesem	dieser	diesem	jenem	jener	jenem
. diesen	diese	dieses (dies)	jenen	jene	jenes

Plural.

Nom.	diese	jene
Gen.	dieser	jener
Dat.	diesen	jenen
Acc.	diese	jene

REMARKS.

1. These two pronouns are frequently used conjointly to express an indeterminate number, quantity, or variety of persons & things not specially designated: e. g., *Bald besucht mich Dieser, bald Jener*—there is always some one calling upon me, one to-day, another to-morrow; *Wer recht handelt, braucht sich nicht darum zu kümmern, was Dieser und Jener von ihm sagt*—he who does right need not care (trouble himself) about the remarks which this one or that one may choose to make upon his conduct; *Sie spricht ohne Überlegung heute dieses und morgen jenes*—she talks without reflection or consideration, saying one thing to-day, another thing to-morrow.

2. Instead of *dieser, jener*, we say sometimes also *der eine, der andere*—the one, the other; *der erstere, der letztere*—the former, the latter; *der erste, der zweite*—the first, the second.

3. The pronouns *dieser* and *jener* may be used, of course, throughout in their substantive capacity; yet it is always better to avoid using them so in the genitive case, more particularly when the latter happens to precede the governing word: e. g., instead of *Dieser Tugend, Jener Schönheit*, say *dieses Mannes Tugend, jener Frau (Person, &c.) Schönheit*, or *die Schönheit jener Frau, &c.*

The German language employs also frequently, in lieu of the pronouns *dieser* and *jener*, the original demonstrative pronoun *der, die, das*, which, like *dieser* and *jener*, is used both as a substantive and an adjective pronoun.

The adjective pronoun *der, die, das*, is inflected exactly like the definite article, from which it differs outwardly only in point of accentuation, the article being invariably unaccentuated, whereas the pronoun has always at least the demi and frequently even the full accent (compare Chapter i., Note to the declension of the articles).

The substantive pronoun *der, die, das*, is inflected as follows:—

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>deffen (des)</i>	<i>deren (der)</i>	<i>deffen (des)</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>die</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>deren</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>denen</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>die</i>

The abbreviated genitive form *des* is used only in compounds (*deshalb, deswegen, &c.*), and by poets, and in the more elevated style of writing: e. g.,

*Des rühme der blutige Tyrann sich nicht,
Daf der Freund dem Freunde gebrochen die Pflicht &c.*

The abbreviated form *der*, for the genitive singular of the feminine, is altogether obsolete.

The genitive plural *deren* is hardly ever used except in lieu of *ihrer* or *derselben*: e. g., *Er hat viele Freunde, ich habe deren nur wenige* he has many friends, I have but few.

Note.—*Der, die, das*, is used, moreover, as a *determinative* and a *relative* pronoun. The pupil may, therefore, find it difficult sometimes to decide at the first glance whether this pronoun is used in its *demonstrative*, or in its *determinative*, or in its *relative* capacity. The application of the following plain rule will suffice to settle the question: where you can substitute *dieser, diese, dieses*, for *der, die, das*, the latter pronoun is *demonstrative*; where *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige*—*determinative*; where *welcher, welche, welches*—*relative*. (See also the following paragraphs on the determinative and relative pronouns.)

ADDITIONAL REMARK.

The local adverbs *hier, da, dort*, here, there, are sometimes added to *dieser, jener*, and *der*, to mark the respective localities with greater precision: *hier* designates the local position of the first, *da* that of the second, *dort* that of the third person or thing: e. g., *dieser hier* this one here (i. e., where I stand), *der (dieser) da* that one there (i. e., where you stand), *jener dort* that one yonder, &c.

SECT. IV.—DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

The determinative pronouns of the German language are,

1. *Derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige*, he, that, that one.

Singular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	derjenige	diejenige	dasjenige
<i>Gen.</i>	desjenigen	derjenigen	desjenigen
<i>Dat.</i>	demjenigen	derjenigen	demjenigen
<i>Acc.</i>	denjenigen	diejenige	dasjenige

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	diejenigen
<i>Gen.</i>	derjenigen
<i>Dat.</i>	denjenigen
<i>Acc.</i>	diejenigen

2. *Derfelbe, dieselbe, dasfelbe*, he, that, the same, that one.

Singular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	derfelbe	dieselbe	dasfelbe
<i>Gen.</i>	desfelben	derfelben	desfelben
<i>Dat.</i>	demfelben	derfelben	demfelben
<i>Acc.</i>	denfelben	dieselbe	dasfelbe

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	diefelben
<i>Gen.</i>	derfelben
<i>Dat.</i>	denfelben
<i>Acc.</i>	diefelben

The form *selbiger, selbige, selbiges*, which was formerly often used instead of *derselbe*, is obsolete now, and hardly ever met with in good authors.

3. *Der, die, das*, he, that, that one. The *adjective* determinative pronoun *der, die, das*, is inflected exactly like the definite article. (See the preceding paragraph on the demonstrative pronoun.) In its *substantive* capacity it is inflected like the substantive demonstrative pronoun of the same name, with the exception of the genitive plural, which it forms in *r* instead of *n*—*derer* instead of *deren*.

4. *Solcher, solche, solches*, such, such a one. This is inflected like *dieser* and *jener* when used without the article. When preceded by the indefinite article it assumes the inflections of the weak declension of adjectives, and is declined accordingly as follows :—

MASCULINE.

<i>Nom.</i>	ein folcher, eine folche, ein folches
<i>Gen.</i>	eines, einer, eines folchen
<i>Dat.</i>	einem, einer, einem folchen
<i>Acc.</i>	einen folchen, eine folche, ein folches.

Placed *before* the indefinite article, it throws off the inflections altogether, leaving simply the root *solch*, which serves for all three genders, and is left unaltered in the genitive, dative, and accusative, the article alone being declined: e. g., *solch ein Mensch, solch eine That, solch ein Verbrechen* such a man, deed, crime; gen. *solch eines Mannes, solch einer That, solch eines Verbrechens*, &c.; *ein solcher Mensch, eines solchen Menschen*, &c.: or without the article, *solcher Mensch; gen. solches Menschen, dat. solchem Menschen*, &c.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Derjenige* and *der* purely announce a person or thing of whom or of which something is to be said; they require accordingly always to be followed by a dependent relative sentence connected with them by means of the relative pronouns *welcher* or *der*: e. g., *Derjenige, welchen ich gestern besuchte, ist mit denen, welche Du heute sprachst, nahe verwandt* he (the person, man, &c.) whom I visited yesterday, is nearly related to those (those people) whom you spoke to (with) to-day, &c.

2. *Derselbe* has the same signification as *derjenige*, but implies besides a notion of *identity*, which is frequently strengthened still by putting the adverb *eben* very, before it: e. g., *derselbe Mann (or Derselbe), welchen Du siehst* the same (man) whom you see; *derjenige Fremde, mit welchem Du sprachst, ist eben derselbe, der mir gestern begegnete*—the stranger to whom you spoke is the very same who met me yesterday (whom I met yesterday), &c.

Der nämliche the same, is frequently substituted for *derselbe*.

To mark the identity of the person or thing designated still more strongly and emphatically, we have recourse to the aid of the *indefinite* article *ein*, connecting it with the pronoun by means of the *conjunction* *und*; thus we form *ein und derselbe* one and the same.

In this combination the *ein* is left unaltered throughout.

MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
ein und derselbe	ein und dieselbe	ein und dasselbe
ein und denselben	ein und derselben	ein und dasselben
ein und demselben	ein und derselben	ein und demselben
ein und denselben	ein und dieselbe	ein und dasselbe

form is not used in the plural. The form *eine und dieselbe*, *id derselben* for the feminine, is also frequently met with. A dependent relative sentence is omitted after *derselbe*, in cases it may be readily understood and mentally supplied: e. g., *immer noch Derselbe*, or *eben Derselbe* (viz., *der er sonst war*) he the same, the very same (that he was formerly); *es ist ja eben, er wohnt in demselben Hause*, &c.

Solcher, solche, solches corresponds to the English *such, such a* he dependent relative sentence is sometimes omitted after it, the same circumstances under which it is omitted after *der*. e. g., *von einem solchen Menschen* (viz., *wie dieser ist*) *lässt sich nichts erwarten* from such a man (viz., as this one is) nothing to be expected, *solche Menschen findet man selten* such men are not with (found). *Solcher* assumes, accordingly, sometimes the signification of the demonstrative pronoun *dieser, diese*, e. g., *es sei ferne von mir, solches zu thun* far from me be it to (act). But it is decidedly wrong to use *solcher* in lieu of *er*, or of *derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe*; therefore you must not say, *erund ist heute angekommen, aber solcher* (instead of *er*) *will schon wieder abreisen. Er hat seine Klagschrift übergeben, es solche* (instead of *dieselbe*), &c.

SECT. V.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

are,

the substantive pronoun *wer? was? who? what?*

	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	wer	was
Gen.	weissen	(wet)
Dat.	weim	
Acc.	wem	was

Solcher? welche? welches? who? which? what?

is essentially an adjective pronoun, but it is used sometimes in substantive capacity. It is inflected the same way as *dieser* and

Was für ein? what, what sort (kind) of?

Was für einer? what, what sort (kind) of one?

Was für? what, what sort (kind) of?

Was für ein is used before substantives in the singular number, with the exception of nouns of materials, such as *Wein* wine, *Obst* fruit. The *ein* alone is inflected, *was für* remaining unaltered in the plural.

Before nouns of materials, and any substantive in the plural, *was für* is used.

c. The form *was für einer*, *was für eine*, *was für eines*, is used as a substantive pronoun. Strictly speaking, this last form can have no plural; the common conversational language, however, has formed a plural to correspond with the singular number, viz., *was für welche* what sort (kind) ?

Note.—Take care not to separate the constituent parts of this compound pronoun from each other. Do not say, for instance, *Was hast Du für einen Fisch gefangen?* since this might be interpreted, what have you caught for (i. e., in lieu of, instead of) a fish? but say, *was für einen Fisch hast Du gefangen?* what sort or kind of fish have you caught? &c.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Wer* refers exclusively to persons, both male and female, but never to things, no matter of what gender; *Was* is applied only to things or, at all events, indefinite objects, which have not yet been distinctly recognised to be persons: e. g., *wer ist da? ein Mann, eine Frau, ein Kind*—who is there? a man, a woman, a child; *Wu (not wer) ist das? ein Tisch, eine Uhr*—what is that? a table, a watch, &c. And if we saw, for instance, at a great distance, some vague, indistinct object that might be perhaps a man, perhaps a tree, perhaps a horse, or something else, we must say *was (not wer) ist das? ein Mensch, oder ein Baum?* &c.

The genitive *wessen* and dative *wem* are used only in reference to persons, not to things. The abbreviated form *wes*, however, is used in compositions (such as *weswegen*, *weshalb*) in reference to things: e. g., *weswegen zürnen Sie mir?* wherefore are you angry with me? &c.

Was is only rarely used after prepositions; the compounds formed by the latter and the pronominal adverb *wo* being generally substituted instead: e. g., *wofür halten Sie mich?* what do you take me for? *wodurch gedenken Sie das zu bewirken?* whereby think you to effect this? There are, however, departures from this rule: e. g., *Um was streitet ihr?* what object are you fighting for (quarrelling about)? *Warum streitet ihr?* would mean, why do your quarrel?

2. With regard to the respective signification and use of the three interrogative pronouns, I may briefly state here, that *wer*, *was*, simply demands to know the species to which the object in question belongs; *was für ein* demands a more particular description of the nature or condition of the object of the question; and *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, lastly, requires a precise designation of the object itself: e. g., *Wer ist da?* who is there? *Ein Fremder* a stranger. *Was für einer?* what stranger (what kind of stranger)? *Ein Schullehrer aus Berlin* a schoolmaster from Berlin. *Welcher Schullehrer?* which schoolmaster? *Herr Arnold* Mr. Arnold, &c.

3. *Was für ein*, and *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, serve also as exclamations, to express surprise, amazement, or admiration: e. g., *was für ein Mann!* *welcher Mann!* *welche Schönheit!* *welches Geschrei!* *welcher Glanz!* what a man! what beauty! what noise! what splendour! &c. In this signification *welcher* may, like *solcher*, drop its inflections, and combine with the indefinite article: e. g., *Welch ein*

Mann ist das! Welch ein Wunder! Welch eine Tiefe der Weisheit! Welch eines Mannes Größe preißeſt Du! In this acceptation, *welch* comes to stand sometimes also immediately before an adjective, in which case either *welch* or the adjective takes the inflections of the strong declension of adjectives; if *welch* takes them, the adjective is inflected after the weak declension; if the adjective takes them, *welch* remains unaltered: e. g., *welcher helle Glanz*, or *welch heller Glanz! welches laute Geſchrei*, or *welch lautes Geſchrei!*

SECT. VI.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The German language possesses no specific words for the relative pronouns, but is compelled to use as such the *interrogative* pronoun *wer*, *was*, and *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*; and the *demonstrative* pronoun *der*, *die*, *das*. *Wer*, *was*, and *der*, *die*, *das* (in its relative acceptation), are invariably used as substantive pronouns. *Welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, also, is mostly used as a substantive pronoun; sometimes, however, it appears in an adjective capacity.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The relative pronoun is never omitted in German.

2. The relative pronoun *wer*, *was*, expresses simply and purely the idea of relation; it can, therefore, be used only in reference to general objects or ideas, represented by a determinative or demonstrative pronoun, or in reference to indefinite numerals (*Jeder*, *Alles*, *etwas*, *nichts*, *Einiges*, &c.), or, finally, in reference to whole sentences: e. g., *Jeder, wer einen Zweck erreichen will*, &c., he who wishes to attain an object; *Das iſt es, was ich Dir zu ſagen hatte*; *Alles, was ich habe, weiſt Du*.

Wer das kann, was er will, iſt ein beglückter Mann;
Doch weiſt Du groſ iſt der, wer das will, was er kann!

Wer, *was*, can never be used in relation to concrete or individualised objects: thus you must not say, for instance, *der Mann, wer geſtern bei mir war*; *das Haus was mein Nachbar bewohnt*, but *der Mann, welcher* (or *der*); *das Haus, welches* (or *das*), &c.

The determinative pronoun may frequently be altogether omitted before *wer*, *was*, in which case this pronoun combines in itself the attributes both of the determinative and relative pronouns, and may be resolved into *derjenige welcher*, *diejenige welche*, *dasjenige welches*. In cases of this kind the relative sentence commencing with *wer* or *was* is made to precede the principal sentence by inversion: e. g., *Wer nicht hören will, muſ fühlen* (i. e., *der* or *derjenige, welcher nicht*; but not *der, wer nicht hören will*, &c.) he who will not hear must feel. However, the determinative *der* and *das* may be used in addition to *wer*, *was*, and placed at the head of the principal sentence: e. g., *Wer nicht hören will, der muſ fühlen*; *wer Verſtand hat, der beſitzt einen groſen Schatz*, &c. The omission of the determinative is altogether inadmissible in sentences where the two pronouns happen to stand in different cases: e. g., you should not say, for instance, *wer ſich nicht rathen läſſt, kann man nicht helfen*, but *dem kann man nicht helfen*; not *wer mich liebt, liebe ich wieder*, but *den liebe ich wieder*; not *wem ich dienen kann, nenne ſich*, but *der nenne ſich*, &c.

The forms *wer*, *weſſen*, *wem*, *wen*, are applicable only to persons of either sex; *was* is applied only to things and abstract ideas. The abbreviated genitive *weſ* alone is used also in reference to things, both by itself and in compounds (*weſwegen*, *weſhalb*, &c.): e. g., *Weſ das Herz voll iſt, deſ läuft der Mund über. Ich weiſ nicht weſhalb er mich haſſt*—I know not why (wherefore) he hates me, &c.

3. In all cases where the relative refers to a personal pronoun, of the first or second person, *der*, *die*, *das*, ought to be used, and not *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*: e. g., *Du, der Du ihn kennſt; er, der der ältre iſt*, &c. In most other cases the use of either the one or the other of these pronouns is almost entirely a matter of choice, depending in a great measure upon the ear. Generally speaking, the short *der*, *die*, *das*, is more frequently resorted to in common conversational language than the form *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, which, on account of its fuller tone, is used in preference to *der*, *die*, *das*, in polite conversation, sustained discourse, and oratory, alternating only occasionally with the shorter form.

Wherever it happens so that the article *der*, *die*, *das* follows after the relative pronoun, *welcher*, *welche*, *welches* should always be used, to avoid the dissonance that would otherwise result from the conjunction of words of identic sound: e. g., therefore say not *das iſt der Mann, der der Vater jener Kinder iſt*, but *welcher der Vater*, &c.

4. The genitive singular and plural of the substantive relative pronoun is invariably taken from *der*, *die*, *das*, never from *welcher*; it is, accordingly, in the singular, *deſſen*, *deren*; in the plural, *deren*: e. g., *der Mann, deſſen (not welches) Umſtände ich kenne; die Frau, deren (not welcher) Tochter Du meiñſt; das Kind, deſſen (not welches) Triebe früh geleitet werden müſſen; die Schwalben, deren (not welcher) Neſter als Leckerbiſſen geſſen werden, wohnen in Indien*, &c.

However, in cases where the relative pronoun is used in an adjective capacity, the genitives *welches* and *welcher* must necessarily be resorted to: e. g., *Cicero, welches groſen Redners Schriften ich kenne. Sappho, welcher berühmten Dichterinn Vaterland die Inſel Lesbos war*.

5. The use of the indeclinable word *ſo* as a relative pronoun is obsolete, though poets and authors employ it still sometimes in this acceptance.

6. The adverb *da* is frequently added in German after the nominative of the relative pronouns *der*, *die*, *das*, and *wer*, *was*: e. g., *wer da hat, dem wird gegeben; Alles, was da kreucht und flucht*, &c. However, the insertion of this word imparts no different or additional meaning to the sentence.

7. The English adverb *ever* in *whoever* or *whosoever*, *whichever*, &c., is rendered in German mostly by *auch*, but occasionally also by *immer*: e. g., *whoever may have ſaid it, it is not true wer es auch geſagt haben mag, es iſt nicht wahr; whatever it may be was es immer ſei*, &c.

8. The accusative (singular and plural) of *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, is still sometimes used in popular language, in the acceptance of *some*: e. g., *Haſt Du noch Käſe? Ich habe noch welchen. Haſt Du noch Nüſſe? Ich habe noch welche*, &c. But it is decidedly more correct to say, in the first of the two preceding examples, *ich habe deſſen*.

noch; in the second, *ich habe deren noch*, or *ich habe noch einige* (or simply *ich habe noch*).

PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

Da there, *wo* where, *hier* here, *her* hither, *hin* thither, are pronominal adverbs of place.

So so (as), *wie* how (as), are pronominal adverbs of manner and degree.

Dann then, *wann* when, are pronominal adverbs of time.

Da and *wo* form with *her* and *hin* the compound pronominal adverbs *daher* thence, from that place; *dahin* thither, to that place; *woher* whence, from what place; *wohin* whither, to what place.

The pronominal adverbs *da* and *wo* serve also frequently to supply the place of the personal pronoun *es*, of the relative and interrogative pronoun *was*, and of the dative and accusative cases of the pronouns *der* (*dieser*), *welcher*.

In this representative capacity *da* and *wo* (before vowels *dar* and *wor*, or exceptionally also *war*), coalesce with prepositions; the compounds thus formed being used in lieu of the preposition and pronoun. Thus we have, for instance, *dabei*, in lieu of *bei dem* (*diesem*); *darin*, in lieu of *in dem* (*diesem*); *dafür*, in lieu of *für das* (*dies*) or *für es*; *dadurch*, in lieu of *durch es*, *durch das* (*dies*); *wobei*, in lieu of *bei welchem*; *warum*, in lieu of *um was*, &c. Of the preposition *ohne* alone, the compounds *darohne*, *worohne*, are never used.

These pronominal compounds, as well as the simple pronominal adverbs *da* and *wo*, should be used only in relation to whole sentences or general terms, and to abstract nouns and nouns of inanimate things not preceded by the article. They ought never to be had recourse to when the pronoun is meant to refer to a person, or to some definite individual object clearly determined by the article. In the latter instance it is far preferable, in point of grammatical correctness, to use the pronouns *der*, *dieser*, *welcher*, &c., with the governing preposition preceding them in the regular way; e. g. *Es war mein Vater, mit welchem* (not *womit*) *ich ging*; *mein Bruder und meine Schwester, von denen* (not *wovon*) *ich so eben sprach*; *Dies ist das Haus, in welches* (not *wohin* or *worein*) *ich ziehen werde*; *ein Mann, durch den* (not *wodurch*) *ich diese Nachricht erhielt*; *die Seife, zu welcher* (not *wozu*) *man Fett und Lauge braucht, ist in der Wirtschaft unentbehrlich*; but *Thue nichts, womit* or *wodurch* *Du Dir Schaden könntest*. *Wozu braucht doch mancher junge Mensch eine Brille*; *wohin reisen Sie, und woher kommen Sie*? *Ich komme aus der Stadt Blankenburg, in der ich ein Jahr gewesen bin, und reise nach Bremen, wo ich Verwandte besuchen will*. *Das Buch, das ich Dir geliehen, ist sehr nützlich*; *lies nur fleißig in demselben* (not *darin*), &c.

As regards *es* and *was* especially, the use of the pronominal-positive compounds should never be resorted to where the pronoun happens to represent some individual, definite, and determinate object; wherever this happens to be the case, the best and most correct way is to substitute *daselbe* or *dieses* for *es*, and *welches* for *was*: e. g., *das Haus, von welchem* (not *wovon*) *wir sprechen*; *das Geschenk, mit welchem* (not *womit*) *er mich erfreut hat*; &c.

CHAPTER III.

THE ADJECTIVE.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

Adjectives are either *primitives*, or *derivatives*, or *compounds*.

Note.—Many adjectives in *el*, *en*, *er*, and *e*, are spurious primitives.

The *derivatives* are formed from nominal and verbal roots by means of *prefixes* or by means of *suffixes*.

The prefixes that serve in German for the formation of derivative adjectives are *be*, *erz*, *ge*, *miß*, *un*, *ur*.

The suffixes or terminations used for the same purpose are *bar*, *en*, *ern*, *haft*, *icht*, *ig*, *isch*, *lich*, *sam* (*end*, *et*); and also, for the formation of numeral adjectives, *zig* or *fzig*, and *lei*.

I will give here, as I have done in the chapter on the substantive, a few hints regarding the power and signification of the more important of these prefixes and suffixes.

a. PREFIXES.

With respect to *erz*, *miß*, *un*, and *ur*, I refer the pupil to the remarks on the same subject in the Chapter on the Noun Substantive (Chapter i., The Substantive, Introductory Remarks).

Ge (with *et* or *en* added to the root of the verb) serves to form the participle past of verbs; with substantives it forms, with the aid of a *t* added to the noun, adjectives conveying the notion of being endowed or furnished with the object denominated by the noun: e. g., *gestiefelt* booted, from *Stiefel* boot, &c. With verbs and verbal roots it forms adjectives of similar import, and also adjectives attributing to the noun a capacity, receptivity, tendency, or disposition for the idea embodied in the verb. The adjectives formed by *ge*, with verbs and verbal roots, take frequently the termination *ig*: e. g., *gelänfig* voluble, fluent, *gelehrig* docile, *gefräßig* voracious, *gehässig* hateful, odious, *gefügig* pliable, flexible, *geschmeidig* supple, pliant, &c.

b. TERMINATIONS.

Bar and *sam* correspond most to the English *able* (also to *ful*). *Bar* expresses more the faculty to *suffer*, *sam* more that to *do* or *perform* the act or object denominated by the root. This distinction, however, holds not good throughout, particularly in what concerns *bar*; *sam* corresponds also frequently to the English *some*, *ive*, *iou*, *ary*.

ig corresponds to the English *y* (in some formations also to *able, ious*). In general, the termination *ig* may be said to form adjectives conveying the notion of the possession of some external objective attribute. Adverbs, prepositions, and numerals are, by the termination *ig*, transformed into attributive adjectives: e. g., *hiefig*, from *hier* here; *dortig*, from *dort* there; *heutig*, from *heute* to-day; *übrig*, from *über* over; *baldig*, from *bald* soon, &c.

Isch serves to form adjectives from the names of nations; it corresponds to the English *ish, an, or ian*; in words derived from foreign languages, *ic* or *ical*: e. g., *mathematisch, poetisch, kritisch, historisch, logisch, lyrisch*, &c.

Lich like, implies resemblance in form, shape, state or condition, mode or manner of acting, to the object designated or represented by the root: e. g., *männlich* manly, manlike, *eine männliche Handlung* a manly act, an act befitting or befitting a man. It corresponds to the English *ly, like, al*; to the latter English termination more particularly in formations from verbal substantives and appellative nouns of things: e. g., *künstlich* artificial, from *Kunst*; *mündlich* oral, from *Mund* mouth; *wörtlich* verbal, from *Wort* word; *buchstäblich* literal, from *Buchstab* letter; *herzlich* cordial, from *Herz* heart, &c. In formations from verbs it corresponds to the English *ive* or *able*; in formations from adjectives, to the English *ish*; in the latter it has a diminutive power: e. g., *roth* red, *rothlich* reddish; *weich* soft, *weichlich* softish (weakish); *süß* sweet, *süßlich* sweetish, &c. Formerly the termination *lich* was used more than it is now to form from adjectives the corresponding adverbs; in this sense and application it corresponds entirely to the English *ly*, and so it does mostly in adverbial formations from the participle present of verbs: e. g., *wissentlich* knowingly, from *wissend* knowing (the final *d* of the participle is in these formations changed to *t*).

Icht corresponds to the English *y*; it serves to form, from names of materials, and from appellative nouns of things, adjectives attributing to the noun which they accompany the nature of the material, &c., represented or designated by the radical: e. g., *erdicht* earthy, resembling earth, *holzicht* woody, woodlike, *ölicht* oily, *kupfericht* coppery, *wollicht* woolly, resembling wool, *steinicht* stony, &c.

Haft corresponds in many formations to the English *ous*, in some to *ful* and *able*. The adjectives formed with this termination attribute, in general, to the noun which they accompany, the inherence of or intimate connection with the object or idea expressed by the radical: e. g., *lasterhaft* vicious, *tugendhaft* virtuous, *schamhaft* modest, bashful, *dauerhaft* durable, *schwatzhaft* loquacious, talkative, babbling, *sieghaft* victorious, *flatterhaft* frivolous, flighty, *lebhaft* vivacious, lively, *herzhaft* courageous, *fabelhaft* fabulous, &c. The termination *haft* is only exceptionally used in connection with the names of persons or animals: e. g., *mannhaft* manly, *meisterhaft* masterly, *riesenhaft* gigantic, *eselhaft* asinine, &c.

With adjectives it forms only the following four:—*boshaft* malicious, spiteful, *krankhaft* sickly, diseased, *wahrhaft* veracious, true, *leckerhaft* dainty, delicate.

En (= after *r*), and *ern* serve to form, from names of materials and

appellative nouns, adjectives denoting the material of which the object denominated by the noun which they accompany consists: e. g., *leinen, flächsen, golden, tuchen, wollen, seiden, eisern, sinnen, bleiern, silbern*, &c., from *der Lein* linen, *der Flachs*, *das Gold*; *das Tuch* cloth; *die Wolle*; *die Seide* silk; *das Eisen* iron, *das Zinn* tin, *das Blei* lead, *das Silber*, &c.

En serves also to form the participle past of verbs of the strong conjugation.

End serves to form the participle present of verbs, corresponding to the English *ing*. *Et (t)* serves to form the participle past of the verbs of the weak conjugation, corresponding to the English *ed*.

In compound adjectives the last component or groundword is invariably an adjective; the determinative component may be either an adjective, or a substantive, or a particle. In compound adjectives, formed by the combination of a substantive with an adjective, the letters *s* and *n* (*es* and *en*) are in most cases inserted between the determinative component and the groundword. (See the remarks on compound substantives in Chapter I., Introductory Remarks.)

The adjective accompanies the noun either as *attribute* or as *predicate*.

In the latter capacity, the adjective is grammatically independent of the noun, to which it is joined simply by means of the copula, and remains altogether unaltered: e. g., *der Mann ist gut*; *die Frau ist gut*; *das Kind ist gut*; *die Männer, Frauen, Kinder sind gut*.

Note.—The pupil should take care to distinguish between the *predicative adjective* and the *qualitative adverb*, since every adjective may be used equally as adverb. But the adjective, used as such, invariably qualifies the noun; whereas used in an adverbial capacity it qualifies either another adjective or the predicate attributed to the noun; compare, for instance, *der Schüler ist fleißig* the pupil is diligent, industrious, assiduous; and *der Schüler lernt fleißig* the pupil learns assiduously; *der fleißig lernende Schüler* the diligently or assiduously learning or studying pupil, &c.

In its *attributive* capacity the adjective *precedes* the substantive, and is grammatically dependent upon it; i. e., it agrees with it in *gender, number, and case*. (See *Declension of Adjectives*.)

Note.—In some rare instances, particularly in poetry, the attributive adjective is placed *after* the noun; in that case the adjective remains altogether unaltered: e. g., *ein Mädchen schön und wunderbar* a maiden beautiful and wonderful.

OBSERVATIONS.

The following adjectives can only be used *predicatively*.—

Primitives: *Angst, brach, feind, gäng und gebe* or *gäbe, gram, irre, kund, leid, noth, nütz, quer, quitt*. Derivatives and compounds: *abhold, abspenstig, abwendig, ankeischig, ansichtig, ausfindig, eingedenk, getrost, gewahr, habhaft, handgemein, theilhaft, unpaß, verlustig* (and with most grammarians also *bereit, gar, gewürtig*).

The following are used only *attributively*.—

a. The adjectives formed from adverbs of time or place.

b. Many *in lich* which denote more the mode and manner of an act

or performance than the quality of a substance, and partake accordingly more of the nature of an adverb than of an adjective: e. g., *mündlich, schriftlich, täglich, stündlich, anfänglich, eidlich, wörtlich*, &c. Take, for instance, *er besucht mich täglich* he visits me daily, and *ein täglicher Besuch* a daily visit: in both sentences *täglich* is essentially adverbial, in the latter it has simply assumed the adjective inflection; it can never be used *predicatively* like a true adjective; we cannot say *er ist täglich* he is daily.

c. The prevailing custom of the modern German language denies to the derivative adjectives in *en* and *ern*, denoting the material of which a thing consists, the privilege of *predicative* application; whenever an occasion arises to use them *predicatively*, we employ instead the preposition *von*, and the noun from which the adjective is derived: e. g., *ein goldener Becher* a golden cup, *dieser Becher ist von Gold* (not *golden*).

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The *comparative* degree of *superiority* is formed in German by adding *er* to the adjective: e. g., *groß* great, comp. *größer* greater.

Note.—Dis- and poly-syllabic adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, or *er*, usually elide the *e* of the termination in the formation of the comparative degree: e. g. *dunkel*, comp. *dunkler*; *bitter*, *bitterer*. This syncope is even absolutely necessary if the adjective is used in its attributive capacity, and requires accordingly the addition of the declensive inflection: e. g., *ein heitrerer Tag*, *die dunkleren Nächte*, &c. Here the retention of the *e* would be a positive fault.

The *relative superlative* degree of *superiority* is formed by adding *st* or *est* to the adjective: e. g., *größest* greatest (usually contracted to *größt*), *edelst* noblest.

The termination *est* is used only after *d*, *t*, *st*, *s*, *f*, *sch*, *z*: e. g., *hold*, *holdest*; *berühmt*, *berühmtest*, &c.

Note.—Adjectives terminating in *isch* form the superlative better by periphrasis: e. g., *barbarisch*—*am meisten* or *im höchsten Grade barbarisch* (not *barbarischest*).

All adjectives terminating in any other letter than those enumerated above, take the simple *st*.

In adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, or *er*, the *e* elided in the comparative is restored in the superlative degree: e. g., *heiter*, *heiterer*, *heiterst* (not *heitrest*); *dunkel*, *dunkler*, *dunkelst* (not *dunklefst*), &c.

The participles in *end* and *et* take likewise the simple *st* in the superlative, in deviation from the rule which requires *est* after *d* and *t*.

Most of the primitive adjectives change *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, in the comparative and superlative degrees: e. g., *arm*, *ärmer*, *ärmst*; *hart*, *härter*, *härtest*; *kurz*, *kürzer*, *kürzest*.

Exceptions.—a. All adjectives with the diphthong *au*: e. g., *blau*, *blauer*, *blauft*; *grau*, *grauer*, *grauft*; *laut*, *lauter*, *lautest*.

b. The following: *barfch*, *blank*, *bloß*, *brav*, *bunt*, *dumppf*, *fahl*, *fallb*, *falsch*, *flach*, *froh*, *gemach*, *hohl*, *hold*, *kahl*, *karg*, *knapp*, *lahm*, *laß*, *mat*, *morsch*, *nackt*, *platt*, *plump*, *rafch*, *roh*, *rund*, *sacht*, *samft*, *satt*.

schlaff, schlank, schroff, starr, stolz, straff, stumm, stumpf, toll, voll, wahr, wund, zahm.

c. *Bang, blas^s, fromm, gesund, glatt, klar, na^s, and zart.* With these latter eight adjectives, however, the practice is more doubtful, and we find even in good authors *bänger* and *bängst*, *blässer* and *blässest*, *frömm* and *frömmst*, &c. But the best grammarians and writers leave the vowels of these adjectives unaltered, and write *banger, bangst; blasser, blassest; gesunder, gesunde*, &c.

The so-called spurious primitives in *el, en, er, e*, the derivatives formed by means of terminations, and the participles, are not susceptible of the modification of the vowels *a, o, u*.

The comparative of *hoch* high (*der hohe*, &c.), is *höher*; the superlative, *höchst*.

The comparative of *nah* nigh, near, is *näher*; the superlative, *nächst*.

The qualitative adverbs borrowed from adjectives form the superlative degree by periphrasis with the aid of the preposition *an*, contracted with the article to *am*: e. g., *er schreibt am schönsten* (instead of *schönst*), *lies't am glücklichsten* (instead of *glücklichst*) *von uns Allen*, &c. In some instances the superlative is formed by combination with the preposition *zu*: e. g., *zuerst, zuletzt, zunächst, zumeist, zuvörderst*.

There are, indeed, a few adverbs of which the simple form of the superlative is also used, but always in an *absolute*, never in a *relative* or *comparative* capacity. Superlatives of this kind are *höchst, äußerst, nächst, jüngst, längst, meist*, &c.; and from derivatives, *baldigst, innigst, freundlichst, höflichst, gehorhamst, unterthänigst, gütigst, gefälligst*, &c.

Some of these absolute superlatives (superlatives of eminence) are expressed also by adding *ens* to the simple superlative form: e. g., *bestens, höchstens, wenigstens, meistens, längstens*, &c. Or by periphrasis with *aufs, zum*, im: e. g., *aufs beste, zum schönsten, im geringsten nicht* not in the least, &c.

The following adjectives derived from adverbs form no comparatives: *der, die, das obere, untere, innere, äußere, vordere, hintere, niedere, mittlere*; the superlatives are *der, die, das oberste, unterste, innerste, äußerste, vorderste, hinterste, mittelste*.

The numerals *der erste* the first, and *der letzte* the last, form the comparatives *der erstere* the former, and *der letztere* the latter.

The following adjectives and adverbs form the comparative and superlative degrees irregularly:—

<i>gut</i> good	<i>besser</i>	<i>best</i>	|	<i>bald</i> soon	<i>eher</i>	<i>ehest</i>
<i>viel</i> much	<i>mehr</i>	<i>meist</i>	|	<i>gern</i> willingly	<i>lieber</i>	<i>am liebsten</i>
<i>wenig</i> little	<i>minder</i>	<i>mindest</i>	|	<i>wohl</i> well	<i>wohler</i>	<i>am wohlsten</i>

The comparative *wohler* and the superlative *am wohlsten* are used only in reference to the physical state, or state of health.

Wenig has also the regular forms *weniger, wenigst*.

In compound adjectives and adverbs the signs of comparison are added to the last component: e. g. *vollkommen, vollkommen, vollkommenst; wohlklingend, wohlklingender, wohlklingendst*, &c.

Compounds, however, with the determinative component *viel*, may, in partial deviation from this rule, form the comparative also by changing *viel* to *mehr*: e. g., *vielfach*—*mehrfach* or *vielfacher*; *vieldeutig*—*mehrdeutig* or *vieldeutiger*. But the superlative must be formed in the regular way: *vielfachst* (not *meistfach*), *vieldeutigst* (not *meistdeutig*).

Note.—The word *mehr*, in compound adjectives, means frequently simply *more than one*, and cannot be looked upon accordingly as a higher degree of *viel* many. It is, therefore, always preferable to form the real comparative of adjectives composed with *viel* in the regular way, i. e., by adding to the last component the sign of comparison. Compare, for instance, the word *mehrsilbig*, i. e., having *more than one* syllable, and *vielsilbig* poly-syllabic, having *many* syllables; surely the former cannot be regarded as a *higher* degree of the latter. The only truly correct comparative is accordingly here *vielsilbiger*—*dieses Wort ist vielsilbiger als jenes* this word has more syllables than that one (the other).

The German language uses, besides the regular signs of comparison, also certain adverbs, to graduate or modify the force of the two degrees of comparison, and also of the positive degree. The force of the *positive* degree is increased by *sehr* very, *höchst* most, most highly, *äußerst* extremely, exceedingly, *ungemein* uncommonly, *außerordentlich* extraordinarily, *vor allen* above all, before all, *zu* too, overmuch, &c.: e. g., *sehr klug* very prudent, very wise, *äußerst dumm* exceedingly stupid, *höchst tyrannisch* most tyrannical, &c. The force of the positive is diminished or moderated by *ziemlich*, *mäßig* tolerably, moderately, &c.: *ziemlich weit* tolerably far, *mäßig groß* moderately large, &c.

The force of the *comparative* is increased by *viel* much, *weit*, *bei weitem* far, *ungleich* by far, much, *noch* still: e. g., *viel schöner* much handsomer, *weit größer* far greater, &c. The force of the comparative is diminished or more accurately defined by *wenig* little, *etwas* somewhat: e. g., *wenig kleiner* little smaller, *etwas größer* somewhat larger, &c.

The force of the superlative is increased by the genitive *aller* of all, which coalesces with the superlative to one word: e. g., *der allergrößte* (*der größte von Allen*) the very greatest (the greatest of all), *der Allerhöchste* the Most High, *am allerbesten* the very best, in the very best way or manner, &c. And also by *bei weitem* by far: e. g., *bei weitem der größte* by far the greatest, &c.

The *comparative* and *superlative* degrees of *inferiority* can be formed in German by periphrasis alone. The *comparative of inferiority* is expressed by putting before the adjective the comparatives *weniger*, *minder* less; the *superlative* by putting before the adjective the superlatives *wenigst*, *mindest*; *am wenigsten*, *am mindesten* least: e. g., *weniger* or *minder reich*, *groß*, *alt*, *schön*—less rich, great, old, handsome; *der wenigst große von uns Allen* the least tall of us all, *am wenigsten reich*, *groß*, *schön*—least rich, great, beautiful, &c.

OBSERVATION.

In sentences where the comparison lies between two qualities attributed in a different degree to the subject, the comparative

superiority also cannot be expressed otherwise than by periphrasis; the comparative *mehr* more, is in such cases put before the first of the two adjectives, if this designates the quality possessed by the subject in a superior degree; *minder* or *weniger*, if it happens to designate the quality possessed in an inferior degree by the subject: e. g., *er war mehr todt, als lebendig* he was more dead than alive; *sie ist mehr liebenswürdig, als schön* she is more amiable than beautiful; *dieser Tisch ist weniger breit, als lang* this table is less broad (wide) than long, &c.

The conjunctions which the German language uses in comparisons, are *wie* and *als*; the former corresponds to the English *as*, and serves in comparisons between *positives*; the latter corresponds to the English *than*, and serves in comparisons between *comparatives*: e. g., *Rosa ist so geschickt und liebenswürdig, wie ihre Mutter* Rose is as clever and amiable as her mother; *Bertha ist fleißiger, als ihre Schwester* Bertha is more industrious than her sister.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

It has already been stated that the attributive adjective (except in the few rare instances where, in deviation from the general rule, it is placed after the noun) agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun which it accompanies.

The attributive adjective has three different forms of declension, which are termed respectively the *strong* form, the *weak* form, and the *mixed* form. The inflections of either of these three forms (according to circumstances), are respectively added to the simple predicative form of the adjective, both as regards the positive degree and the two degrees of comparison.

Note.—Adjectives ending in *e* drop the final vowel when assuming the inflections of the attributive form; *hoch* changes the *ch* to *h*, *der hohe*, &c.

1. STRONG FORM OF INFLECTION.

Singular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.		MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	er	e	es	<i>Dat.</i>	em	er	em
<i>Gen.</i>	es	er	es	<i>Acc.</i>	en	e	es

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	e	<i>Gen.</i>	er	<i>Dat.</i>	en	<i>Acc.</i>	e
-------------	---	-------------	----	-------------	----	-------------	---

The attributive adjective takes the inflections of the strong form, when it is either not preceded by any determinative or preceded simply by one lacking the power of inflection (either absolutely or in the case in question); determinatives of this kind are *etwas* some, *genug* enough, *allerlei* various, many sorts, *vielerlei* many sorts, *multifarious*, *mancherlei*, &c.; *dergleichen* such, such like, *lauter* all, naught but, *viel* much, *wenig* little, *mehr* more; and also the definite cardinal numbers *zwei*, *drei* (when not inflected), *vier*, *fünf*, *sechs*, *sieben*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	guter Wein	gute Speise	gutes Geld
Gen.	gutes Weines	guter Speise	gutes Geldes
Dat.	gutem Weine	guter Speise	gutem Gelde
Acc.	guten Wein	gute Speise	gutes Geld

Plural for the Three Genders.

Nom. and Acc.	gute Weine, Speisen, Gelder
Gen.	guter Weine, Speisen, Gelder
Dat.	guten Weinen, Speisen, Geldern

Decline in the same way *besserer Wein, bessere Speise, besseres Geld; etwas guter Wein, gen. etwas gutes Weines, dat. etwas gutem Weine; acc. etwas guten Wein; allerlei gute Speise; lauter neues Geld; wenig alter Wein; plur. wenig alte Weine; sechs lange Tage, &c.*

The attributive adjective takes the inflections of the strong form also when preceded by the personal pronouns *ich, du, wir, ihr*.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	Du guter Mann	Du gute Frau	Du gutes Kind
Gen.	Deiner, gutes Mannes	guter Frau	gutes Kindes

(In this case, however, it is more in accordance with the prevailing practice of the language to say *Deiner, des guten Mannes, der guten Frau, des guten Kindes*.)

Dat.	Dir gutem Manne	Dir guter Frau	Dir gutem Kinde
Acc.	Dich guten Mann	Dich gute Frau	Dich gutes Kind

Plural.

Nom.	Ihr gute Männer, Frauen, Kinder
Gen.	Euer guter Männer, Frauen, Kinder
Dat.	Euch guten Männern, Frauen, Kindern
Acc.	Euch gute Männer, Frauen, Kinder

With the pronoun of the second person, the substantive with its adjective may also be placed throughout in the *vocative* case; with the pronoun of polite address, this is even absolutely necessary, as far as regards the dependent cases. We can, indeed, say *Sie guter Mann, Sie gute Frau, Sie gutes Kind*; but we cannot say, in the dative for instance, *Ihnen gutem Manne*.

With this pronoun we decline, accordingly, as follows:—

Singular.

Nom. and Acc.	Sie,	} guter Mann! gute Frau! gutes Kind!
Gen.	Ihrer,	
Dat.	Ihnen,	

Plural.

Nom. and Acc.	Sie,	} gute Männer! gute Frauen! gute Kinder!
Gen.	Ihrer,	
Dat.	Ihnen,	

2. WEAK FORM OF INFLECTION.

Singular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	e	e	e
<i>Gen. and Dat.</i>	en	en	en
<i>Acc.</i>	en	e	e

Plural for the Three Genders.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i> ——en
-------------	-------------	-------------	------------------

The attributive adjective takes the inflections of the weak form when it is preceded by the definite article, or by some other determinative having the full inflections *er, e, es*.

Determinatives of this kind are more particularly the following:—

1. *Dieser, jener, derselbe, derjenige, der, welcher, solcher.*

Note.—When *solcher* is conjoined with the indefinite article (no matter whether preceding or following), the form of inflection of the adjective is governed by the article, and not by *solcher*: e. g., *ein solcher guter Mensch* or *solch ein guter Mensch*.

2. The indefinite numerals *aller, einiger, etlicher, mancher*; and also *vieler, weniger, jeder, jeglicher, mehrer, verschiedener*; and also the words *anderer, folgender, erwähnter*.

Note.—The latter nine determinatives (*vieler, &c.*) may, however, again be preceded and governed by one of the articles or by a pronoun, in which case they are themselves treated as adjectives: e. g., *der viele Staub, das wenige Papier, dieser wenige Ertrag, welcher andere Punkt, ein jedes or jegliches Geschöpf*.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	der schöne Baum	die schöne Blume	das schöne Feld
<i>Gen.</i>	des schönen Baumes	der schönen Blume	des schönen Feldes
<i>Dat.</i>	dem schönen Baume	der schönen Blume	dem schönen Felde
<i>Acc.</i>	den schönen Baum	die schöne Blume	das schöne Feld

Plural for the Three Genders.

<i>Nom.</i>	die schönen Bäume, Blumen, Felder
<i>Gen.</i>	der schönen Bäume, Blumen, Felder
<i>Dat.</i>	den schönen Bäumen, Blumen, Feldern
<i>Acc.</i>	die schönen Bäume, Blumen, Felder

3. MIXED FORM OF INFLECTION.

Singular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	er	e	es
<i>Gen. and Dat.</i>	en	en	en
<i>Acc.</i>	en	e	es

Plural for the Three Genders.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i> ——en
-------------	-------------	-------------	------------------

The attributive adjective takes the inflections of the mixed form, when preceded by the indefinite article, or by one of the possessive pronouns (*mein, dein, sein, unser, euer, ihr*), or, finally, by the negative numeral *kein, keine, kein*.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
N. mein schöner Garten	meine schöne Wiese	mein schönes Haus
G. meines schönen Gartens	meiner schönen Wiese	meines schönen Hauses
D. meinem schönen Garten	meiner schönen Wiese	meinem schönen Hause
A. meinen schönen Garten	meine schöne Wiese	mein schönes Haus

Plural for the Three Genders.

Nom.	meine schönen Gärten, Wiesen, Häuser
Gen.	meiner schönen Gärten, Wiesen, Häuser
Dat.	meinen schönen Gärten, Wiesen, Häusern
Acc.	meine schönen Gärten, Wiesen, Häuser

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The adjectives in *el, en, er*, and the comparatives in *er*, drop the *e* of the termination before the inflections *e, er, es, em*: e. g., *edel, edel-er, edel-e, edel-es, edel-em*; *heiter, heitr-er, heitr-e, heitr-es, heitr-em*; *vollkommen, vollkommn-er, vollkommn-e, vollkommn-es, vollkommnem*; *größer, größr-er, größr-e, größr-es, größr-em*.

Before the inflection *en*, adjectives in *en* drop the *e* of the termination: e. g., *vollkommn-en, eb-n-en, off-n-en*, &c. Adjectives in *el* and *er*, and comparatives in *er*, drop the *e* of the inflection, instead of that of the termination: e. g., *edel-n, heiter-n, besser-n, früher-n*.

Notes.—1. The adjectives and comparatives in *er* drop sometimes the *e* of the inflection *em* instead of that of the termination: e. g., *heiter-m, größr-m, schöner-n*, &c.

2. The *e* of the comparative sign should be retained in all cases where its elision might occasion some difficulty in the pronunciation of the word, or create a harshness of sound; therefore you must not say, for instance, *edlre, wüßre, keuschres*, but *edlere, wüßtere, keuscheres*. These and similar comparatives permit the elision of the *e* only in the case of the inflection *en*: e. g., *edler-n, wüßter-n*, &c.

2. The adjectives *ganz* whole, entire, all, and *halb* half, take no inflection before the names of countries and places when they are not preceded by the article: e. g., *ganz Europa kennt ihn* all Europe knows him; *in ganz Berlin finden Sie eine solche Strafe nicht*; *in ganz Deutschland*; *halb England weiß darum*. But preceded by the article, the adjectives *ganz* and *halb* take the inflections of the weak form: e. g., *die ganze Türkei, der ganze Breisgau, das ganze Deutschland*, &c. The indefinite numerals *viel, mehr, wenig*, occur also frequently without inflection, even when used in an adjective capacity: e. g., *viel Geld, wenig Menschen, mit mehr Glück*, &c. The numer-

all can be used in this simple form without inflections only before demonstrative and possessive pronouns: e. g., *all dieser Reichthum, all das Glück, bei all seinem Gelde ist er nicht glücklich, mit all dem Gelde, all mein Thun, all jene Freuden, &c.*

3. When two or more co-ordinate adjectives precede a noun, neither of them exercises any influence over the form of inflection of the others, but they follow all equally the rules laid down in the preceding paragraphs on the inflection of adjectives: e. g., nom. *ein guter, alter, weiser Mann*; gen. *eines guten, alten, weisen Mannes*; dat. *einem guten, alten, weisen Manne*; acc. *einen guten, alten, weisen Mann*. Nom. *guter, alter, kostbarer Wein*; gen. *gutes, altes, kostbares Weines*; dat. *gutem, altem, kostbarem Weine*; acc. *guten, alten, kostbaren Wein*. Nom. *der gute, alte, weise Mann*; gen. *des guten, alten, weisen Mannes*; dat. *dem guten, alten, weisen Manne*; acc. *den guten, alten, weisen Mann*.—Plural: nom. *gute, alte, weise Männer*; gen. *guter, alter, weiser Männer*; dat. *guten, alten, weisen Männern*; acc. *gute, alte, weise, Männer*. Nom. *diese guten, alten, weisen Männer*; gen. *dieser guten, alten, weisen Männer*; dat. *diesen guten, alten, weisen Männern*; acc. *diese guten, alten, weisen Männer*; mit *frohem, willigem Herzen*; nach *langem, vergeblichem Warten, &c.*

4. If two determinatives (pronouns or numerals) happen to precede a noun, the latter one of the two may or may not be dependent on the former; it is considered dependent on it if it admits of the definite article being put before it, and in that case it is treated as a dependent adjective, and takes the inflections of the weak form: e. g., nom. *dieses viele Geld*; gen. *dieses vielen Geldes*; dat. *diesem vielen Gelde*; acc. *dieses viele Geld*. Nom. *mancher andere Freund, jenes wenige Vermögen*; gen. *manches anderen Freundes, &c.*; plural, *manche anderen Freunde, &c.* Of course, if the first determinative lacks the signs of inflection the second takes them, as all adjectives do under such circumstances: e. g., *sein vieles Geld, unser weniges Vermögen, ein anderer Freund, &c.*

But if the second of the two determinatives does not permit the use of the definite article before it, it is independent of the first, and takes the inflections of the strong form accordingly: e. g., nom. *aller dieser Vorrath*; gen. *alles dieses Vorraths*; dat. *allem diesem Vorrath*; acc. *allen diesen Vorrath*; plural, nom. *alle diese Vorräthe*; gen. *aller dieser Vorräthe*; dat. *allen diesen Vorräthen*; acc. *alle diese Vorräthe*. Nom. *dieser mein Freund*; gen. *dieses meines Freundes*; dat. *diesem meinem Freunde*; plural, *diese meine Freunde, &c.*; *dieses Alles, bei diesem Allem*; *welches Alles, welchem Allem, &c.*

5. If the two determinatives are followed by an adjective, the form of inflection of the latter is determined either by the first or by the second; by the latter, if the two determinatives are co-ordinate; by the former, if the second determinative is dependent on the first: nom. *dieser mein guter Nachbar*; gen. *dieses meines guten Nachbarn*; plural, *diese meine guten Nachbarn, &c.*; *alles dieses große Unglück*; *dieser unser großer Garten*; *all dieser reiche Vorrath*; gen. *all dieses reichen Vorraths*; dat. *all diesem reichen Vorrath*; acc. *all diesen reichen Vorrath*; plural, *all diese reichen Vorräthe*. Nom. *dieses viele ererbte Geld*; gen. *dieses vielen ererbten Geldes, &c.*; *jene*

wenige erworbene Vermögen, mancher andere gute Freund, sein vieles erworbenes Gold, mein wenig erworbenes Vermögen, ein anderer guter Freund, ein solcher neuer Wagen, ein solches buntes Kleid, &c.

Note.—The prevailing practice of the language deviates from this rule in the case of *ein jeder* and *ein jeglicher*. It is the almost universal practice, for instance, to say *ein jeder gute Nachbar, ein jedes neue Haus*. Yet, however prevalent and general this practice may happen to be, it is decidedly more correct to say *ein jeder guter Nachbar, ein jedes neue Haus*.

6. When an attributive adjective is preceded immediately by a substantive in the genitive case, the adjective takes the inflections of the strong form : e. g., *meines Vaters neues Haus, in meines Vaters neuem Hause, der Tugend steiler Pfad, vor der Tugend steilem Pfade, Karls bester Freund, mit Heinrichs jüngstem Bruder, zu Carolinens großer Freude, &c.*

GOVERNMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE.

(See page 55, *Government of the Substantive*.)

The number of adjectives governing cases is comparatively small. Most adjectives express *absolute* qualities and which require no complementary adjunction ; and even where some complement is added to modify or define within more narrow limits the quality expressed by the adjective, this complement is usually joined to the adjective by means of a preposition. The same remark applies, in a great measure, also to the case of *relative* adjectives ; i. e., such as absolutely require the addition of a complement for the full and complete enunciation of the quality which they are intended to express.

Properly speaking, the adjective can only govern two cases, viz., the genitive and the dative.

However, adjectives defining weight, value, or measure, or extension in time or space, are always construed with the accusative of the noun specifying the weight, value, measure, &c., and which noun is usually accompanied by a numeral : e. g., *zwoölf Jahre alt* twelve years old, *hundert Thaler werth* worth one hundred dollars, *er ist einen Kopf größer, als sein Bruder* he is a head taller than his brother, &c.

As a general rule, the adjective is construed with the *genitive* of its complement when this complement happens to be a *thing* (inanimate object, or abstract idea) ; with the *dative* when it happens to be a *person* : e. g., *er ist seines Versprechens eingedenk* he is mindful of his promise, *er ist seinem Freunde dankbar* he is grateful to his friend. There are, of course, many exceptions from this rule, which it would lead us, however, here too far to pursue more in detail.

The following adjectives admit of the *genitive construction* alone : *bedürftig, eingedenk (uneingedenk), gewärtig, habhaft, theilhaft or theilhaftig (untheilhaft), verlustig* ; and also *bedürftig (unbedürftig), kündig (unkündig), michtig, quitt, verdächtig* (in the sense of *suspected of*), *würdig (unwürdig)*, whenever they happen to be accompanied by a complement.

The following, which ought to be construed regularly with

genitive case, are also, though in most instances very incorrectly, construed with the accusative: *ansichtig, gewahr, gewohnt, los, müde, satt, überdrüssig, werth*. In truly correct language the accusative is here excusable only in cases where these adjectives happen to be conjoined in the same sentence with the verb *werden*. With respect to *werth*, the accusative is correct, as already stated, when this adjective is used in the acceptation of the English *worth*, i. e., to designate the price or value of a thing; but wherever it stands in the sense of *worthy*, the genitive alone is admissible. *Los* is construed also with the preposition *von*; the intervention of this preposition between *los* and its complement must necessarily be had recourse to in all cases where *los* happens to stand in conjunction with one of the verbs *machen, sagen, or sprechen*.

The adjective *bar* bare, free from a thing, is construed with the genitive case; and so is *schuldig* when used in the sense of *guilty, culpable of*. *Fähig* and *unfähig* are construed either with the genitive or with the preposition *zu*; *froh*, with the genitive or with the preposition *über*; *frei, gewiß, ledig, leer, voll*, with the genitive or with the preposition *von*.

Note.—With *frei* and *leer* the simple genitive is used still in poetical language only, and in compounds, such as *voncurtsfrei, freudenleer, &c.*

All participles, both active and passive, of verbs governing the genitive case, are equally construed with that case.

The following adjectives govern the dative case: *abtrünnig, ähnlich, angehörig, angenehm, anhängig, anständig, anstößig, ärgerlich, bedenklich, begreiflich, behaglich, behülflich, bekannt, beliebig, bequem, beschwerlich, beifällig, böse, dankbar, deutlich, dienlich, dienstbar, eigen, eigenthümlich, einträglich, ekelhaft, empfindlich, entbehrlich, erfreulich, erinnerlich, erkennlich, erklärlich, ersprieflich, erträglich, feil, feind, feindselig, fern, förderlich, fremd, fühlbar, furchtbar, fürchterlich, gebührlich, gedeühhlich, gefährlich, gefällig, gehässig, gehörig, gehorsam, geläufig, gemäß, gemein, gemeinsam, gemeinschaftlich, geständig, gesund* (in the sense of beneficial, salutary), *getreu, gewogen, glaublich, gleich, gleichgültig, gnädig, gram, günstig, gut, heilsam, hinderlich, hinlänglich, hold and abhold, kostbar, kund, lächerlich, lästig, leicht, leid, lieb, möglich, nachtheilig, nahe, noth, nöthig, nothwendig, nütz and nützlich, peinlich, rathsam, recht, sauer, schädlich, schätzbar, schimpflich, schmeichelhaft, schmerzhaft, schmerzlich, schrecklich, schuldig* (in the sense of owing, indebted to—*Jemandem etwas schuldig sein* to owe something to some one), *schwer, sicher, tauglich, theuer, treu, treulos, tröstlich, überlegen, übrig, unausstehlich, unterthan and unterthänig, unvergeßlich, unwiderstehlich, verächtlich, verantwortlich, verbindlich, verdächtig* (in the sense of suspicious to), *verdaulich, verderblich, verdrießlich, verständlich, verwandt, vortheilhaft, wahrscheinlich, werth* (in the sense of dear to), *wichtig, widerlich, widerspenstig, widerrwärtig, widrig, willfährig, willkommen, wunderbar, zugänglich, zugehörig, zuständig, zuträglich, zweifelhaft*, and the opposites of many of these, formed by means of the negative prefix *un*; also a number of adjectives derived from verbs by means of the terminations *lich* and *bar*, and expressing a faculty or potentiality.

Note.—Many of these adjectives may also be construed with prepositions, more especially with *für*, and in some cases also with *gegen* and *mit*. Thus, instead of "*das ist mir angenehm, heilsam, gesund, bequem, schädlich, vortheilhaft*," we may say, *das ist angenehm, heilsam, gesund, &c., für mich*;" instead of "*er erwies sich mir dankbar*," "*er erwies sich dankbar gegen mich*;" instead of "*ich bin ihm verwandt*," we say more commonly, "*ich bin mit ihm verwandt*." Generally speaking, however, the simple dative is in such cases preferable to the prepositive construction.

The participles, both active and passive, of verbs governing the dative case, are, of course, equally construed with that case, and so are also the following participial adjectives, which have entirely lost their verbal nature: *angeboren, angeerbt, angelegen, angemessen, angestammt, beigethan, beschieden, ergehen, erwünscht, gelegen, geneigt und abgeneigt, gewachsen, verbunden, verhasst, zugethan*; and also *unerwartet* and *unverhofft*.

Some adjectives, in *predicative* application, and also a few adverbs, are construed with the dative only in certain expressions where they stand associated with the accompanying verb, constituting with the latter an enunciation of a simple notion or idea: e. g., *einem etwas anheim stellen* to defer something to one, to leave it to his free will, *es steht ihm frei* it is permitted to him, left to his choice or pleasure, *einem etwas weis machen* to impose upon one, to deceive, to delude, *einem wehe thun* to hurt or offend one, *einem wohl thun* to benefit, favor, befriend one, &c.

To this category belong more particularly the impersonal expressions: *es ist mir* or *mir ist*, *es wird mir* or *mir wird*, *angst, bange, heiß, kalt, schlimm, schwindlig, übel, warm, weh, weinerlich, wohlgemuth, &c.*

In conclusion, I have to remark, that every and any adjective may possibly be accompanied by the dative of the person concerned in the quality, &c., expressed by the adjective; but in such cases the dative is to be regarded simply as *dativus commodi*, and may be usually replaced by the preposition *für* with the accusative: e. g., *die Arbeit war ihm* (or *für ihn*) *gering*; *die Sünde ist dem Menschen natürlich*, &c. Even participles of *transitive* verbs may, when applied in a strictly adjective acceptation, thus be construed with the *dative* case: e. g., *die kühle Abendluft ist mir* (*für mich*) *erquickend*; *sein Betragen war mir* (*für mich*) *beleidigend*, &c.

This dative of the person concerned stands more particularly with the adjective when the latter is accompanied by one of the adverbs of intensity or degree (*zu, allzu, genug, nicht genug*): *das Kleid ist mir zu lang, nicht weit genug*; *diese Wohnung ist mir groß genug*, &c.

The adjective *bewusst* governs the dative of the person when used in the sense of *known to*; when used in the sense of *aware of, conscious of*, it governs the dative of the person, and at the same time the genitive of the object of which the person is conscious or aware: e. g., *ich bin mir meines Rechtes bewusst* I am conscious (aware) of my right.

CHAPTER IV.

THE NUMERALS.

The numerals are divided into *definite* and *indefinite* numerals.

I. DEFINITE NUMERALS.

These are divided again into *cardinal numbers* and *ordinal numbers*.

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1. eins, ein (ein, eine, ein ; einer, eine, eines ; der, die, das eine)	22. zwei und zwanzig
2. zwei	23. drei und zwanzig, &c.
3. drei	30. dreißig
4. vier	31. ein und dreißig
5. fünf	32. zwei und dreißig, &c.
6. sechs	40. vierzig
7. sieben	50. fünfzig
8. acht	60. sechzig
9. neun	70. siebenzig
10. zehn	80. achtzig
11. elf	90. neunzig
12. zwölf	100. hundert, einhundert
13. dreizehn	101. hundert und eins, <i>or</i> ein
14. vierzehn	102. hundert und zwei, &c.
15. fünfzehn	200. zweihundert
16. sechzehn	300. dreihundert, &c.
17. siebenzehn	1,000. tausend, eintausend
18. achtzehn	10,000. zehntausend
19. neunzehn	100,000. hundert tausend
20. zwanzig	1,000,000. eine Million
21. ein und zwanzig	(Billion, Trillion, Quadrillion, Quintillion, &c.)

OBSERVATIONS ON THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

a. Eins is used only in counting : e. g., *eins, zwei, drei ; einmal eins ist eins*. And when no allusion or reference is made to any particular object : e. g., *es hat eins geschlagen* it has struck one. *Die Eins* the (number) one, forms the plural *die Einsen* the ones. But when it is followed by a substantive or by another numeral, *ein* is used instead : e. g., *ein Pfund, ein und zwanzig, &c.*

Ein is indeclinable only when standing in conjunction with another numeral : e. g., *mit ein hundert und ein und dreißig Stimmen ; von eintausend, einhundert und ein und achtzig Menschen, &c.*

When *ein* stands before a substantive (no matter whether accompanied by an adjective or not), and has neither the definite article

nor a pronoun before it, it is inflected like the *indefinite article*, from which it is distinguished only by a stronger intonation: e. g., *ein Mann* one man, *eine Frau* one woman, *ein Kind* one child, *ein guter Mann* one good man, *eines guten Mannes*, &c.

When it is preceded by the definite article, or by a pronoun, inflected after the strong form, it receives the inflections of the *weak form* (see *Declension of Adjectives*): e. g., *der eine Mann, die eine Frau, das eine Kind*; gen. *des einen Mannes, der einen Frau, des einen Kindes*; *dieser eine, jene eine, welches eine*, &c., *der Eine und der Andere*. In this latter instance *ein* is used in the capacity of a pronoun, and even forms the plural number: e. g., *die Einen* (*die Einen und die Anderen* the ones and the others).

When it is preceded by one of the possessive pronouns it receives the inflections of the *mixed form* (see *Declension of Adjectives*): e. g., *mein einer Sohn, meine eine Tochter, mein eines Pferd*; gen. *meines einen Sohnes, meiner einen Tochter, meines einen Pferdes*, &c.

When it stands alone, either in a pronominal capacity or relating to a substantive preceding or following, it is inflected after the *strong form* (see *Declension of Adjectives*): e. g., *kein Mensch war da, auch nicht einer*; *er theilt keinem Armen etwas mit, auch nicht einem*; *einer meiner Freunde*; *er hat es nur Einem von uns gesagt*; *ich kenne hier nur Einen* (see *Indefinite Pronouns*).

Note.—*Ein* is also sometimes used in the sense of the same: e. g., *eine Stadt hat uns geboren* the same town has given us birth.

b. Zwei and *drei* are inflected only when they are not preceded by either article or pronoun: e. g., nom. *zwei, drei Zeugen*; gen. *zweier, dreier Zeugen*; dat. *zweien, dreien Zeugen*; acc. *zwei, drei Zeugen*.

Note.—If a preposition governing the dative happens to stand before *zwei* or *drei*, these numerals are left unaltered: e. g., *von zwei oder drei Dingen eines wählen, mit drei Personen sprechen*, &c.

When *zwei* and *drei* are preceded by the indefinite article or by a pronoun, they remain unaltered: e. g., *er hat das Geld diesen drei Leuten gegeben, die Aussage jener zwei oder drei Zeugen*, &c.

Notes.—1. In some compounds *zwei* is often used instead of *zwei*: e. g., *zwiesack, zwiespalt, zwieback, zwielicht, zwietracht*.

2. The German word *beide* (gen. *beider*, dat. *beiden*, acc. *beide*; or with the article *die beiden*, gen. *der beiden*, dat. *den beiden*, acc. *die beiden*) corresponds to the English word *both*. The article is never placed after it, as it is sometimes in English. *Beide* ought to be employed only in reference to two objects, either naturally associated or connected mentally with one another, and having the same predicate in common: e. g., *Ich habe zwei Ohren und kann mit beiden Ohren hören, meine beiden Augen, beide Arme, er hat beide Füße verloren, etwas mit beiden Händen fassen, meine beiden Brüder* (provided I have only two brothers; but if I have more than two, *zwei meiner Brüder*); *die beiden Diebe, welche man neulich gefänglich einzog, sind entsprungen*; but *zwei Diebe, welche man gefänglich einzog*, &c.

When referring to inanimate objects (except parts of the body), or to acts, or to abstract ideas in general, the neuter *Beides* is used: e. g., *will er den Rock, oder den Hut haben? er will Beides haben. Beides kann gesehen; er ist mit Beidem zufrieden*.

c. The other cardinal numbers are indeclinable except when used in a substantive capacity, and even in this latter case they only add *en* in the dative: e. g., *auf allen Vieren kriechen, mit Sechsen fahren*, &c.; but *mit sechs Pferden führen; er ist Eigentümer von vier Häusern* (not *vierer Häuser*, nor *von vieren Häusern*), &c.

d. The cardinal numbers are used substantively in several different ways; viz., 1. In an adjective sense, the noun to which they properly belong being omitted: the termination *e* is added in the nominative and accusative, *en* in the dative: e. g., *alle Viere* (i. e., *Füße*), *alle Neune* (i. e., *Kegel nine-pins*), &c. 2. As independent substantives of the female gender, to denote either the figures marked on cards, dice, &c., or simply the abstract notion of the number; used in this acceptation, the numerals remain unaltered in the singular, and take *en* in the plural: e. g., *die Eins, die Einsen; die Zwei, die Zweien; die Fünf, die Fünfen*, &c. To express the abstract notion of the number, the termination *heit* is also frequently added: e. g., *die Einheit* unity, *die Zweiheit, Dreiheit*, &c. 3. *Hundert* and *Tausend* are used as collective substantives of the neuter gender: e. g., *ein Hundert Eier, gen. eines Hunderts*, &c. In the plural they take *e* in the nom., gen., and acc.; *en* in the dative. 4. The termination *er* forms numeral substantives designating a person with reference to his age: e. g., *ein Vierziger* a man forty years old, &c. Or denoting the value of a coin: e. g., *ein Dreier, ein Sechser*, a threepenny piece, a sixpence, &c. Or the age of wines: e. g., *Elfer, Zwei und Zwanziger* wine of the vintage of 1811, 1822. Or, finally, indicating in notation the respective position and value of a cipher: *der Einer* unit, *Zehner, Hunderter, Tausender*, for which we say in English notation units, tens, hundreds, thousands, &c.

e. The following adverbs and prepositions—*etwa, ungefähr, bei, an die, gegen*—correspond to the English *about; beinahe, fast, to almost, nearly; kaum* to *scarcely, hardly*. These adverbs and prepositions are used for the same purpose as their English equivalents: e. g., *an die hundert Jahre alt* about a hundred years old, *beinahe drei Centner schwer* weighing almost three cwts., *es ist kaum zwei Minuten* it is scarcely two minutes, &c. *Bis* to, and *oder* or (between), serve to indicate that the exact amount, number, or value of an object lies somewhere between the two figures given in the sentence: e. g., *es ist vier oder fünf Jahre her* it is four or five years since, between four and five years, *sechs bis sieben Fuß hoch* (from) six to seven feet high, &c. *Einige, etliche* some, are used also in the sense of the English *odd*; in this acceptation they may either *precede* or *stand after* the numeral to which they are added, but the use of the conjunction *und* between them and the numeral is in either case indispensable: e. g., *einige und zwanzig Jahre alt, zwanzig und etliche Jahre alt* twenty and odd years old.

NUMERALS FORMED FROM THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

a. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS.

These are formed by putting before the cardinal numbers the adverb *je*: e. g., *je zwei und zwei* two and two, two at a time; *je drei*, &c.

b. ITERATIVE NUMBERS.

These are formed by adding to the cardinal numbers (and also to the indefinite numerals) the substantive *Mal* time, a fraction of time, period.

eismal once
zweimal twice
dreimal thrice, three times
viermal four times
zehmal ten times

allemaal every time, always
manchmal sometimes, many times
jedesmal every time
einigemal sometimes, &c.

Instead of *keinmal* never, *vielmal* often, many times, *mehrmal* several times, it is more usual to say *keinemals*, *vielmals*, *mehrmals*.

By the addition of the termination *ig* these numeral adverbs are changed into adjectives: e. g., *sein dreimaliger*, *mehrmaliger Besuch*; *die vielmaligen*, *jedesmaligen Aufträge*, &c. When the iterative numbers are placed in conjunction with *so* before an adjective, they have the same signification as the multiplicative numbers formed with *fach*: e. g., *dreimal so groß* three times as tall, &c.

Note.—The iteratives may be written also separated into two distinct words, in which case *Mal*, as an independent substantive, requires a capital initial: e. g., *ein Mal*, *kein Mal*, *jedes Mal*. The capital letter is indispensable in all cases where *Mal* takes the plural form and the regular inflections: e. g., *zu vier Malen*, *zu sechs Malen*, *zu verschiedenen Malen*. After ordinal numbers, also, *Mal* had best be written with a capital letter: e. g., *das erste Mal*, *das dritte Mal*, *zum letzten Male*.

c. MULTIPLICATIVE NUMBERS.

These are formed by adding *fach* or *fältig* fold, to the cardinal numbers, and also to the indefinite numerals *viel*, *mehr*:—

Einfach single, simple; *einfältig* is used in a different (figurative) sense; it means *unsophisticated*, *single of heart*, and also *silly*.

Zweifach (more commonly used than *zweifach*), *zweifältig* twofold (*doppelt* double).

Dreifach, *dreifältig* threefold (but *die Dreifaltigkeit* trinity).

Vierfach, *vierfältig* fourfold, &c.

Mehrfach, *vielfach*, *mehrfältig*, *vielfältig* manifold, *mannigfach*, *mannigfältig* (not *mannigfältig*), manifold, various.

The multiplicative numbers may be used either as adjectives or as adverbs.

d. NUMBERS OF KIND (NUMERALIA SPECIALIA.)

These are formed from the cardinal numbers and from the indefinite numerals by means of the ancient word *lei*, which signifies *mode*, *manner*, *way*, *sort*. The feminine genitive inflection *er* is always inserted between the numeral and the word *lei*: e. g., *einerlei* of the same kind, *zweierlei* of two sorts, &c., *mancherlei* of various sorts or kinds, *keinerlei* of no sort, no manner of, &c.

The numerals in *lei* are indeclinable.

2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

These are formed from the cardinal numbers by adding to the latter, up to *neunzehn* nineteen, inclusive, the termination *te*; from twenty upwards, the termination *ste*. *Der erste* the first, and *der dritte* the third, alone differ from this mode of formation.

Der, die, das erste
 _____ zweite
 _____ dritte

Der, die, das vierte
 _____ swanzigste
 _____ hundertste, &c.

The ordinal numbers are adjectives; they may be used substantively. When they are used in the latter capacity, and relate to persons, they are written with a capital initial, and so they are equally when relating to things of the neuter gender: e. g., *das Erste*, *das Zweite*, &c.

NUMERALS FORMED FROM THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

a. PARTITIVE NUMBERS.

These are formed by adding *l* to the ordinals. Instead of *ein Zweitel* we say *ein Halbes* (*halber, halbe, halbes*), from which adjective formation is derived the substantive *die Hälfte*. Before names of countries and towns, of the neuter gender, the abbreviated form *halb* is used when not preceded by an article: e. g., *halb England*.

The partitive numbers are substantives of the neuter gender, and are inflected regularly after the first form of the strong declension of substantives.

Note.—The partitive numbers are in reality compounds of the ordinals, with the termination *tel*, which is a contraction of *Theil* part, portion (deal); but in combining with *tel*, the ordinals drop the final *te*.

b. DIMIDIATIVE NUMBERS.

These are compounds of the ordinal numbers with the word *halb* half; they are indeclinable. Instead of *zweitehalb*, we say *andert-halb* one and a half. The others are formed regularly; the final *e* of the ordinal number may be elided for the sake of euphony: e. g., *dritthalb*, *vierthalb*, two and a half, three and a half, instead of *drittehalb*, *viertehalb*, &c.

c. ORDINAL ADVERBS.

These are formed by adding to the ordinal number the termination *ens*, the final *e* of the numeral being, of course, thrown out: e. g., *erstens* (instead of which we also say *erſtlich*) first, firstly, *zweitens*, *drittens*, *viertens*, &c.

II. INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

a. The following indefinite numerals relate to number:—

1. *Jeder* (*jedweder, jeglicher*) every, each. *Jedweder* and *jeglicher* are rarely used except in the language of poetry. *Jeder* is an indefinite numeral, conveying, like *all*, *gesammt*, *fämmtlich*, *ganz*, an idea

of *totality*, but differing from these numerals by its *disjunctive* power. *Jeder, jeglicher, and jedweder* are used only in the singular number, except in conjunction with *alle*: e. g., *alle und jede Menschen* all men collectively, and every one in particular or individually. When they are used in a pronominal capacity, or when they stand before the noun without being preceded by the indefinite article, they take the inflections of the strong form; when they are preceded by the indefinite article they take those of the mixed form.

2. *Einiger, einige, einiges* some, used in the singular number before collective and abstract nouns, and nouns of materials, may be considered to belong rather to the class of indefinite numerals which relate to measure or quantity: e. g., *einiger Wein, einiges Obst ist nicht gerathen* some wine, some fruit, (i. e., some of the wine, some of the fruit,) has not turned out well; in these sentences it may, however, also mean *some sorts or kinds* of wine or fruit; *einige Zeit nachher* some time after, *einiges Glück* some luck, a little good fortune.

Of *etlich* some, the neuter alone (*Etliches*) is used in the singular number, and even then only substantively: e. g., *Etliches fiel auf ein gutes Land* some fell among good ground.

The plurals *einige* and *etliche* some, several, relate exclusively to number. When used in the capacity of substantive pronouns they take a capital initial.

3. *Mancher, manche, manches* many a, many a one—plural, *manche* many—is, like *einiger* and *etliche*, inflected after the strong form.

b. The following relate to measure or quantity:—

1. *Etwas* some, something, somewhat, and *nichts* nothing, naught, are indeclinable. These two words are, properly speaking, rather indefinite pronouns than indefinite numerals; *nichts*, more especially, is never used in conjunction with a substantive; it is used, indeed, before adjectives apparently invested with a substantive character: e. g., *nichts Gutes* nothing good, *nichts Neues* nothing new; but the adjective serves here rather as an apposition to *nichts*, instead of being qualified by the latter.

In the English language *nothing* occupies exactly the same position in this respect as *nichts* in the German: i. e., it is used only before adjectives.

2. *Genug* enough, is also indeclinable; it is mostly put after the substantive: e. g., *Menschen genug* men enough, *Geld, Zeit genug* money, time enough; but it may also be put before the substantive: e. g., *genug Menschen*, &c. *Genug* relates both to number and measure, or quantity.

3. *Ganz* whole, entire, denotes the completeness and entirety of a thing, or of a whole consisting of parts; but it never implies a collection of individuals, as *all* does: e. g., *ein ganzes Haus* a whole house, *die ganze Stadt* the whole town, *der ganze Körper* the whole body, &c. Care must accordingly be taken not to confound it in the plural with *alle*; compare, for instance, *alle Apfel* all apples, the whole of the apples, and *die ganzen Apfel* the whole apples (apples left entire, uncut, not divided in portions). In the singular number, however, before collective and abstract nouns, it approaches the signification of *all*: e. g., *sein ganzes Vermögen*, and *all sein Vermögen* his whole

fortune; *mein ganzes Glück*, and *all mein Glück*, &c. For the mention of *ganz* the pupil is referred to the *Additional Remarks*. *Declension of Adjectives*, section 2.

c. The following relates both to number and measure quantity:—

1. *All*—*aller, alle, alles*—all (*das All* the universe). Before substantive and possessive pronouns *all* may be used in its simple form, without inflections: e. g., instead of *alles dieses Getreide*, *alles dieses Getreides*, dat. *allem diesem Getreide*, acc. *alles Getreide*, we may say *all dieses Getreide*, gen. *all dieses Getreides*, *all diese Menschen*, *all seine Freunde*, &c. With this exception, it invariably has the inflections of the strong form, even though a preposition may precede it: e. g., *dieses alles*, *das alles*, all this, all that, *alles* all which, *trotz diesem* or *dem allem* (not *allen*, which is *totally* wrong). The neuter *alles* is used sometimes as a general term in relation to an indefinite number of persons: e. g., *mir folgt Fluch und Alles* *fliehet mich* the curse pursues me, and all shun my presence. In some instances, *all* has the signification of *every*: *alle Jahre, Tage, Wochen*, every year, day, week; *alle vier Monate* every four months, &c.

Note.—The upper German word *alls* corresponds exactly to the English *always*, e. g., *er sagt alls* he says always. This word is, however, never used in the lower German.

2. *Sämmtlich*—*sämmtlicher, sämmtliche, sämmtliches*—all, all together, and *der, die, das gesammte*; plural, *die gesammten* all, the whole, the total; are declined like other adjectives. *Gesammt* requires usually an article or pronoun before it; *sämmtlich* may be used without. The latter is used mostly in the plural, and implies reference to number; the former is used mostly in the singular, and implies a reference to a collective whole: e. g., *sämmtliche Anwesende* all the people present; *die sämmtlichen Anwesenden*; *seine sämmtlichen Freunde* all his friends, every one of his friends, *die gesammte Familie* the whole family, *der gesammte Nachlass* the whole inheritance (the whole property left at the death of a person), *mit gesammter Macht*, &c.

The adverbial locutions *insgesamt* altogether, and *sammt und sonders* the whole party (lot) together, and every one of them individually, are used sometimes in lieu of *sämmtlich* or *gesammt*; the former are put after the substantive: e. g., *die Anwesenden insgesamt*, *seine Freunde sammt und sonders*, &c.

3. *Kein, keine, kein* no (before a substantive, or adjective used in the capacity of a substantive), is inflected like the numeral *ein, eine*; *keiner, keine, keines* none (in the capacity of a substantive pronoun), like *einer, eine, eines*. The plural of both forms takes the inflections of the strong form.

Note.—*Kein* ought never to be used where the negation refers to the predicate of the sentence, and not to any number or quantity. You must not say, for instance, *er kann keine Frau ernähren*, since this would mean he cannot support a wife; but you must say *er kann eine Frau nicht ernähren* he cannot support a wife.

4. *Viel* much, *mehr* more, and *wenig* little, remain uninflected when they imply a reference to measure or quantity; they are inflected like adjectives when they imply a reference to number: e. g., *Lerne nicht auf einmal Vieles, sondern viel* do not study many things at once, but endeavour to learn much of one thing; *mancher trinkt viel Wein, aber nicht vielen Wein* many a one drinks much (a large quantity of) wine, but not many wines (different sorts of wine); *Viele Menschen können keinen Käse essen* (a great) many people cannot eat cheese; *viel Menschen essen mehr, als wenig Menschen* a large number of people eat more than a small number; *er hat viel Bücher gelesen, aber viele nicht verstanden* he has read a good deal (a good many books), but many of the books he has read he has not understood; *er trinkt wenig Wein, und glaubt, daß weniger Wein unverfälscht sei* he drinks little wine, and believes that few wines (sorts of wine) are pure (unadulterated); *es waren gestern mehr Menschen da, als heute; mehrere (or mehrere) derselben gingen aber früh weg* there were more people yesterday than to-day, but several of them left early. When *viel* and *wenig* are preceded by an article or pronoun they are invariably inflected, no matter whether they imply reference to number, or to measure, or quantity: e. g., *das viele Geld, das er hat; sein vieles Geld; seine vielen Geschäfte; dieser wenige Wein; meine wenigen Freunde*. Instead of *ein Weniges*, we say, however, also *ein Wenig*, to indicate a small quantity of a thing: e. g., *ein Wenig Salz, Brod, &c.* a little salt, bread, &c. In locutions of this kind *wenig* is usually written with a small letter: e. g., *ein wenig Salz, &c.* *Mehr* suffers no article or pronoun before it, except in the neuter gender, where it is used in a substantive capacity with the indefinite article *ein*: e. g., *ein Mehres in meinem nächsten Briefe*. When used in the capacity of indefinite pronouns relating to persons, *viel*, *mehr*, and *wenig* are invariably inflected: e. g., *Viele sind berufen, aber Wenige sind auserwählt* many are called, but few are chosen.

CHAPTER V.

THE VERB.

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

The German verbs are either *primitives*, or *derivatives*, or *compounds*.

The etymological formation of the verbs is a subject of too vast and intricate a nature to permit its being treated with any degree of completeness in an elementary work like the present; on the other hand, mere fragmentary allusions would not serve the pupil much. Let it therefore suffice here to say, that all German verbs terminate in the infinitive in *en* or *n* (*en, chen, schen, zen, ensen, igen, iron, iern, eln, ern*). The prefixes, which serve to form derivative verbs, are *be, ent (emp), er, ge, miß, ver, zer*.

The compound verbs are either *separable* or *inseparable*.

The only difference of any practical importance here between *separable* and *inseparable* compound verbs relates entirely to their respective conjugations: viz., in the conjugation of the *separable* compounds the two components are treated in the present and imperfect tenses, and in the imperative, as distinct and independent words.

Separable are—1. Those compound verbs which are formed with the particles *ab, an, auf, aus, bei, dar, ein, fort, her, hin, mit, nach, nieder, ob, vor, weg, zu, zurück*; and also those formed with the compounds of *her* and *hin*: viz., *herab, heran, herauf, herein, heraus, herum, hervor, herzu*; *hinab, hinauf, hinaus, hinein, hinunter, hinweg, hinzu*; *einher, umher, umhin*.

Note.—Compounds, of which the second component happens to be a derivative verb with unaccented prefix, do not admit of the insertion of *ge* in the participle past: e. g., *anerkennen*, part. past *anerkannt* (not *angeerkannt*); *eingestehen*, part. past *eingestanden* (not *ingegestanden*), &c. In the infinitive, however, they require, like all other separable compounds, the insertion of *zu* between the particle and the verb: e. g., *anzuerkennen, einzugestehen*, &c. The verbs *aufserlegen, auferstehen, anberaumen, einverleiben, vorenthalten*, are used only in dependent sentences, where, as will be seen in the section on the *Conjugation of Verbs*, no separation of the two components takes place.

2. Loosely connected compounds of verbs with adjectives and qualitative adverbs, such as, e. g., *großthun, großprahlen, lossprechen, sich losagen, wohlwollen, wohlthun, hochachten, gutsagen, fehl schlagen, gleichkommen*, &c.

3. In compounds with *durch, hinter, über, um, unter, and wieder*, the separability or inseparableness of the compound depends on the position of the accent. If the principal accent falls on the particle, the compound is *separable*; if on the verb, *inseparable*. Some of the compounds with these particles are used in different senses and significations, and are *separable* when used in one, *inseparable* when used in another sense.

Compounds of this kind are—

SEPARABLE,

durchreisen to pass through
durchbrechen to break through, to break
 out of prison
übergehen to pass over, to desert
übersetzen to pass over, to convey over
umgehen to revolve, to go about, to
 associate with
wiederholen to fetch back, to fetch
 again

INSEPARABLE,

durchreisen to travel all over a country
durchbrechen to pierce, to perforate
übergehen to omit, to overlook
übersetzen to translate
umgehen to avoid, to forbear
wiederholen to repeat

4. A few intransitive compounds formed with *miß*, in which that prefix has the principal accent: e. g., *miß*tönen, *miß*greifen, *miß*arten, *miß*bieten, *miß*denken, *miß*gehen, *miß*handeln to act wrongly, to sin (different from the inseparable *miß*handeln to ill-use), *miß*klingen, *miß*lauten, *miß*rechnen, *miß*stimmen, &c. The *zu* of the infinitive, and the *ge* of the participle past, are, in all these verbs, inserted between the two components; but the forms in which the two components would have to stand separate (e. g., *er handelt miß*, *es tönt miß*, *er griff miß*), are obsolete and never used in the modern German.

SECT. I.—INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

I. The German verbs are divided—

1. Into *abstract* and *concrete* verbs. Properly speaking, there is but one *abstract* verb, viz., *sein* to be, which is termed also the *substantive* verb; but *haben* to have, and *werden* to grow, to become, partake also in some respects of the nature of *sein*, and are accordingly frequently ranked with the latter as *abstract* verbs. All other verbs are called *concrete* or *adjective* verbs.

2. Into *subjective* and *objective* verbs. The former express either a quiescent state of the subject—e. g., *ich schlafe* I sleep, *ich ruhe* I rest, &c.; or an action confined to the agent—e. g., *ich gehe* I go or walk, *ich springe* I jump. The latter express an action emanating from the subject or agent and bearing upon some object, either directly, in which case the object is put in the *accusative* case, or indirectly, in which case it is put either in the *genitive* or in the *dative*: e. g., *der Knabe liebt seine Ältern* the boy loves his parents, *er spottet Ihrer* he mocks you, *er schmeichelt Ihnen* he flatters you.

The *subjective* and those of the *objective* verbs which govern the *genitive* or *dative* case, are termed also *intransitive* verbs; those *objective* verbs which govern the *accusative* case, are termed *transitive* verbs.

Notes.—Many of the *transitive* verbs have, besides the direct object in the *accusative*, also an indirect object in the *genitive* or *dative* case: e. g., *er gab mir das Buch* he gave me the book, *er hat ihn der Unterschlagung von Geldern angeklagt* he has accused him of embezzlement.

Some verbs are used in one sense as *transitives*, in another sense as *intransitives*: e. g., *der Knabe stürzte seinen Bruder ins Wasser*

the boy precipitated his brother into the water; *er stürzte, weil er zu schnell lief* he fell because he ran too fast; *die Köchin kocht die Suppe* the cook boils (makes) the broth; *das Wasser kocht* the water boils; *das Kind zerbricht den Topf* the child breaks the pot; *der Topf zerbricht* the pot breaks in pieces; *die Pferde ziehen den Wagen* the horses draw the carriage; *die Schwalben ziehen fort* the swallows move away; *er sprengte den Felsen* he blasted the rock; *er sprengte durch die Stadt* he rode full speed through the town, &c.

Many intransitive verbs are used sometimes apparently as transitives: e. g., *der Kranke schläft den letzten Schlaf* the patient sleeps the last sleep; *er redet eine Sprache, die ich nicht verstehe* he speaks a language which I do not understand; *er hat bittere Thränen geweint* he has wept bitter tears; *Wind und Stürme, Donner und Hagel rauschen ihren Weg* wind and storms, thunder and hail, rush their way (move rushingly on), &c.

II. The transitive verbs alone are susceptible of forming the passive voice. There are a few transitives—e. g., *haben, besitzen* to have, to possess—which are hardly ever used in the passive voice.

The intransitive verbs form no passive voice.

Note.—Expressions like the following—*es wird* or *wurde gelacht, getanz, gefungen, gesprungen*, &c.; *es wurde meiner gespottet, mir wurde geholfen*, &c.; have no real passive signification, but are merely passive turns of language, to which recourse is had for the purpose of simply indicating an act or event without designating the subject or agent.

III. The reflexive or reflective verb holds the middle between the transitive and the intransitive; in their form the reflexives are transitives, differing from the other transitives only in this, that the action is confined to and returns upon the operating agent; in their signification they are, for that very reason, intransitives: e. g., *ich freue mich, ich sehne mich, du grüßst dich, er schämt sich, wir wundern uns, ihr besinnt euch, sie befeifigen sich*, &c.

Some verbs, those in the preceding examples, for instance, are invariably and absolutely reflexive; others are actual transitives, which are simply used reflexively: e. g., *er täuschte mich* he deceived me, *er täuscht sich* he deceives himself, *ich fürchte die Gefahr* I fear the danger, *er fürchtet sich* he is afraid, &c.

Verbs of this kind, when used reflexively, are regarded in the same light as the pure and absolute reflexives, since they have, in their reflexive capacity, like the latter, a purely subjective signification.

In the case of many transitives it happens frequently that the subject and object of the action of the verb are the same: e. g., *ich lobe mich* I praise myself, *er tötete sich* he killed himself, *sich lieben, sich verwunden, sich kämmen, sich waschen, sich baden, sich schlagen, sich rühmen*, &c. Verbs of this description are not regarded in the light of actual reflexives.

IV. The reciprocal verb is formed in German by the aid of the reciprocal pronoun *einander* one another: e. g., *wir lieben einander* we love one another, *sie schmeicheln einander* they flatter one another, &c.

V. *Personal verbs* are those which are conjugated throughout with the three grammatical persons.

Impersonal or, more correctly speaking, *unipersonal verbs* are those which are only used in the third person singular in conjunction with the neuter pronoun *es*: e. g., *es regnet* it rains, *es schneiet* it snows, *es blitzt*, *es donnert*; *es ist kalt, warm, dunkel, &c.*; *es friert mich* I feel cold, *es hungerte ihn* he felt hungry, *es dürstete ihn* he was thirsty, *es grauet mir vor ihm* I am afraid of him, I dread him, *es schwindelte ihm* he felt giddy. As regards the objective unipersonal verbs, the *es* may be altogether omitted and the object put before the verb: e. g., *mich friert, ihn hungert, ihn dürstet, mir graut, &c.*

Some verbs assume, under certain circumstances, the form of *unipersonal verbs*; this is the case, for instance, where a process, state, or condition is mentioned without any definite allusion to the actual subject of the sentence: e. g., *es schlägt vier* it strikes four, i. e., *die Uhr schlägt vier* the clock strikes four. Or where, from a peculiar turn of speech, the logical subject of the sentence is made to occupy grammatically a different position: e. g., *es mangelt an Gelde, es fehlt an dem Nöthigsten*, instead of *Geld mangelt, das Nöthigste fehlt* money is wanting, the most necessary things are wanting; *es giebt Menschen*, instead of *Menschen sind da, vorhanden* there are men, &c. To this category belong also the impersonal passive turn given to certain intransitive personal verbs—*es wurde gespielt, getanzt, gesungen* people played, danced, sung, &c.; and certain reflexive locutions, like the following—*es fragt sich, ob, &c.* it is a question whether, &c., *es schläft sich angenehm hier* one sleeps comfortably here, *es sitzt sich schlecht auf jener Bank* that bench is a bad one to sit upon, &c.

In many apparently unipersonal locutions the *es* is in reality the representative of a subject which has either been already mentioned before or is mentally understood, or, finally, follows in form of a subordinate sentence: e. g., *es ärgert mich, es verdriest mich; es jammert, schmerzt, kränkt mich; es reuet, betrübt, befremdet, dauert, kümmert mich, &c.*; which means simply, *the circumstance or matter of which we are conversing, annoys, grieves, pains, saddens, astonishes me, &c.* We can accordingly here also say quite regularly, *die Sache ärgert mich* the matter annoys me, *der Mann dauert mich* I pity the man, or *es ärgert mich, dies zu sehen* I am annoyed to see this, *es dauert mich, daß dies geschehen ist* I am grieved that this should have happened, *es freut mich (or mich freut), dich zu sehen* I am glad to see you, *es dünkt mich (or mich dünkt), ich höre ihn* I think (methinks) I hear him, *es träumte mir, ich sehe ihn* I dreamt I saw him, &c.

SECT. II.—CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

I. The German verbs, like the English, have only two simple tenses, the *present* and the *imperfect*.

II. The *perfect* and *pluperfect* are formed, as in English, by the conjunction of the present and imperfect tenses of one of the auxiliary verbs, *haben* to have, or *sein* to be, with the participle past of the verb.

Note A.—With the auxiliary verb *haben* are conjugated—

a. All transitive and reflexive verbs.

b. The intransitive verbs which govern a dative or genitive case: e. g., *er hat mir gefallen* he has pleased me, *er hat meiner gedacht* he has thought of me, he has remembered me, &c.

Exceptions.—The following are conjugated with *sein*:—

1. *Begegnen, folgen, gelingen, misslingen, glücken, weichen* (yet in the figurative sense we say also, *er hat mir gut begegnet* he has treated me well, *er hat mir nicht gefolgt* he has not obeyed me).

2. Intransitives, denoting a movement from or towards a place or object: e. g., *entfallen, entlaufen, aufstoßen, auffallen, &c.*; *entgegengehen, &c.*; *er ist mir entlaufen, entgegengegangen, &c.*

c. The unipersonal verbs borrowed from transitives, or from such intransitives as are conjugated with *haben*.

d. Those *subjective* (intransitive) verbs which indicate an act or operation, or denote a lasting state, condition, or sensation of the subject; and also most of those which represent the subject in motion, without any allusion to a starting-point or goal: e. g., *ich habe gefehlt, gearbeitet, gestrebt, geforscht, gelacht, geweint, gefach- ten, gezittert, gelebt, geherrscht; ich habe gedurstet, gehungert, gealtert; die Blume hat geblüht, das Eisen hat geglüht; der Wind hat geweht, die Wunde hat geblutet; ich habe gereist, gelaufen, gesprungen, &c.*

Exceptions.—We say invariably *ich bin gegangen*. The verbs *stehen, liegen, sitzen* are also conjugated with *sein* in the Upper German dialect; but they are more correctly conjugated with *haben*.

e. Compound intransitive verbs, formed with the particle *aus*, and denoting the actual completion of an action or condition: e. g., *er hat ausgedient, die Bäume haben ausgeblüht, sie hat ausgelitten, &c.*

Note B.—With the auxiliary verb *sein* are conjugated—

a. Those intransitive verbs which denote a passive or quiescent state or condition of the subject, or represent it at the outset or term of a motion from or towards a place: e. g., *er ist gefallen, gelandet, gesunken, in die Stadt gedrungen, fortgezogen; er ist gewachsen, verarmt, genesen, gestorben; das Schiff ist gescheitert, das Glas ist geborsten; es ist gediehen, gefault, gerathen; er ist abgereist, angelangt, eingekehrt, umgekehrt; es ist abgeprallt, &c.*

b. Intransitive verbs formed with the prefixes *er*, *ver*, *ent*, or composed with particles, and denoting the transition or passing into a state: e. g., *er ist erkrankt, erschrocken, erstarrt, verhungert, verweset, eingeschlafen, entbrannt; das Licht ist erloschen; er ist aufgewacht, eingeschlafen; die Krankheit ist zurückgetreten, &c.*

Remark.—The simple verbs from which these derivatives and compounds are formed, and which denote a lasting state or condition of the subject, are conjugated with *haben*: e. g., *er hat gekrankt* (or *gekränkt*), *gehungert, geschlafen, gewacht; das Haus hat gebrannt, &c.*

c. Those unipersonal verbs that are borrowed from intransitives conjugated with *sein*.

Note C.—Some verbs are conjugated with both *haben* and *sein*: with the former when indicating an act, operation, or lasting emotion or sensation of the subject, or when the sense of the verb implies a reference to the period (or duration) or manner of the action; with the latter when the verb denotes a transition to a certain state or condition: e. g., *ich habe gefahren* I have driven (acted the coachman)—*ich bin gefahren* I have had a ride (in a carriage); *ich habe fortgefahren* I have continued (to read, for instance)—*ich bin fortgefahren* I have driven off or away (from a place); *ich habe gefroren* I have felt cold—*das Wasser ist gefroren* the water has or is frozen; *der Knabe hat gesprungen* the boy has jumped, leaped—*die Saite ist gesprungen* the cord has snapped, &c.

Others take haben when they imply a reference to the period (or duration) or

ner of action; *sein* when implying a reference to locality or space: e. g., With *ich habe lange geritten* I have ridden a long time (on horseback), *ich habe es Morgen (this morning) geritten*; *ich habe geschwind fast, langsam* slowly, *hickt well, skilfully, ungeschickt awkwardly, badly, geritten*; *ich habe ausgeritten* .., I have ridden my usual time); *fortgeritten* (i. e., I have continued to ride on my usual time); *der Reitlehrer hat vorgeitten, seine Schüler haben ihm vorgeitten* (i. e., the riding master has exhibited the art of horsemanship for the purpose of instructing his pupils, and the latter have endeavoured to imitate his proceedings). With *sein*—*ich bin nach Hanover geritten* I have ridden to Hanover; *ich bin ausgeritten, fortgeritten* I have left home (or some other place) on horseback; *ich bin in drei Stunden hin und her geritten* I have ridden to and fro in three hours; *ich bin über eine Brücke geritten* I have crossed a bridge on horseback, I have ridden over a bridge.

To this class of verbs belong more particularly the following: *eilen, fliegen, fliehen, hinken, jagen, klimmen, kriechen, laufen, reifen, rennen, schleichen, schwimmen, segeln, springen, treiben, wandern*.

II. The future tenses and the conditional mode are formed by the conjunction of the present (indicative and subjunctive) and imperfect (subjunctive) tenses of the auxiliary verb *werden* with the infinitive present and infinitive past of the verb.

V. The passive voice is formed by the conjunction of the verb *werden*, throughout all its modes and tenses, with the participle past of the verb.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

a. AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSE.

1. *Haben*.

INFINITIVES.

Present, haben to have

Past, gehabt haben to have had

PARTICIPLES.

Present, habend having

Past, gehabt had

Future Passive, zu habend to be had

Note.—The participle future passive is used only attributively, and takes the actions of the various forms of the adjective declension: e. g., *hochzuverehrender* highly to be honoured sir; *ein zu lobendes Kind* a child to be praised (deserving praise); *ein nicht zu billigender Schritt* a step not to be approved of; *die zu verändernden Fehler* the faults to be amended (requiring amendment or correction), &c. The same observations apply equally to all German verbs susceptible of forming a passive voice.

Present.

INDICATIVE.

ich habe I have
du hast
er (sie, es, man) hat
wir haben
ihr habet (habt)
sie haben

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich habe
du habest
er (sie, es, man) habe
wir haben
ihr habet
sie haben

Imperfect.

INDICATIVE.

ich hatte *I had*
 du hatteſt
 er (ſie, es, man) hatte
 wir hatten
 ihr hättet
 ſie hatten

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich hätte
 du hätteſt
 er (ſie, es, man) hätte
 wir hätten
 ihr hättet
 ſie hätten

Perfect.

ich habe, &c., gehabt

ich habe, &c., gehabt

Pluperfect.

ich hatte, &c., gehabt

ich hätte, &c., gehabt

First (Simple or Absolute) Future.

ich werde
 du wirſt
 er (ſie, es, man) wird
 wir werden
 ihr werdet
 ſie werden

} haben

ich werde
 du werdeſt
 er (ſie, es, man) werde
 wir werden
 ihr werdet
 ſie werden

} haben

Second (or Exact) Future (Future Past).

ich werde, &c., gehabt haben

ich werde, &c., gehabt haben

First Conditional (Second Form of the Subjunctive of the Imperfect).

ich würde
 du würdeſt
 er (ſie, es, man) würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 ſie würden

} haben

Second Conditional (Second Form of the Subjunctive of the Pluperfect).

ich würde, &c., gehabt haben

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, habe (du), (habe er, habe ſie)*Plural*, habet, habt (ihr), (haben ſie, Sie)

Note.—The German verb has a simple imperative form only for the second person, since a direct request, command, exhortation, advice, warning, prohibition, can be addressed only to the person spoken to. When the command or wish, &c., uttered, refers to a *third* person, the third person of the subjunctive of the present tense is had recourse to: e. g., *er höre, ſie ſchweige*, or *höre er, ſchweige ſie* let him listen, let her be silent. The third person plural of the subjunctive present is mostly used in lieu of the second person plural of the imperative: e. g., *hören Sie* listen, *ſchweigen Sie* be silent, instead of *hört, ſchweigt*. This is simply in accordance with the general practice of the German language to substitute, in polite conversation or address, the third person plural for the second (see also *Personal Pronouns*). The imperative, referring to a *third* person, is also expressed by periphrasis with the auxiliary verb *sollen* shall (see *Auxiliaries of Mode*): e. g., *er ſoll leſen, ſie ſollen*

seien. When the subjective expression of the will or wish refers to the 1st person, the verb *wollen* will, is resorted to: e. g., *ich will lesen*, *wir wollen lesen*—I will read, we will work. Or in an admonitory or exhortative use, the verb *lassen* to let: e. g., *laß* or *laßt uns arbeiten* let us work. The preceding observations apply, of course, equally to all German verbs.

2. *Sein*.

INFINITIVES.

Present, *sein* to be

Past, *gewesen sein* to have been

PARTICIPLES.

Present, *seiend*, *wesend* being

Past, *gewesen* been

Note.—The participle *seiend* is very rarely used; *wesend* is used only in two compounds *anwesend* present, and *abwesend* absent.

Present.

INDICATIVE.

ich bin *I am*
du bist
er (sie, es, man) ist
wir sind
ihr seid
sie sind

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich sei
du seiest (seist)
er (sie, es, man) sei
wir seien (sein)
ihr seiet
sie seien (sein)

Imperfect.

ich war *I was*
du warest (warst)
er (sie, es, man) war
wir waren
ihr wäret (wart)
sie waren

ich wäre
du wärest (wärst)
er (sie, es, man) wäre
wir wären
ihr wäret (wärt)
sie wären

Perfect.

ich bin, &c., gewesen

ich sei, &c., gewesen

Pluperfect.

ich war, &c., gewesen

ich wäre, &c., gewesen

First Future.

ich werde, &c., sein

ich werde, &c., sein

Second Future.

ich werde, &c., gewesen sein

ich werde, &c., gewesen sein

First Conditional.

ich würde, &c., sein

Second Conditional.

ich würde, &c., gewesen sein

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, *sei* (du), (*sei* er, *sei* sie)

Plural, *seid* (ihr), (*sein* sie, *Sie*)

3. *Werden*.

INFINITIVES.

Present, werden *to be (to grow, to become)**Past*, geworden (worden) *sein to have been (to have grown, become)*

PARTICIPLES.

Present, werdend *being (growing, becoming)**Past*, geworden, worden *been (grown, become)*

Note.—*Geworden* is the participle past of the independent verb *werden* to grow, to become; *worden*, that of the auxiliary verb *werden*: e. g., *ich bin groß geworden* I have grown tall, I have become great; *ich bin geliebt worden* I have been loved.

Present.

INDICATIVE.

ich werde
du wirst
er (fie, es, man) wird
wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werde
du werdest
er (fie, es, man) werde
wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden

*Imperfect.**Aorist*

ich wurde (ward)
du wurdest (wardst)
er (fie, es, man) wurde (ward)
wir wurden
ihr wurdet
sie wurden

ich würde
du würdest
er (fie, es, man) würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden

Perfect.

ich bin, &c., geworden *or* worden ich sei, &c., geworden *or* worden

Pluperfect.

ich war, &c., geworden *or* worden ich wäre, &c., geworden *or* worden

First Future.

ich werde, &c., werden ich werde, &c., werden

Second Future.

ich werde, &c., geworden *sein or* worden *sein* ich werde, &c., geworden *sein or* worden *sein*

First Conditional.

ich würde, &c., werden

Second Conditional.

ich würde, &c., geworden *sein or* worden *sein*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, werde (du), (werde er, werde fie)

Plural, werdet (ihr), (werden fie, Sie)

b. AUXILIARY VERBS OF MODE.

The German language has seven auxiliary verbs of mode, viz., *können*, *dürfen*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, *lassen*. *Können*, *dürfen*, and *mögen* express possibility or ability in general (potentiality); *können* expresses more a natural or physical ability or capacity, whilst *mögen* and *dürfen* imply more a moral ability or possibility dependent on the law, or on the will or leave either of the speaker or of a third party: e. g., *die Vögel können fliegen* birds can fly; *er darf nicht ausgehen* he may not (must not) go out, he is forbidden to go out; *er mag kommen* he may come (i. e., he has my permission to come, I give him leave to come, let him come); *er mag nicht essen* he will not eat, he has no desire to eat.

Müssen, *sollen*, *wollen*, imply necessity in general; *müssen* expresses more particularly a natural or physical necessity, *sollen* implies a moral necessity dependent on the will and command of another, *wollen* implies a self-imposed necessity: e. g., *alle Menschen müssen sterben* all men must die; *er soll sterben* he shall die; *er will sterben* he desires death, he is resolved to die.

Lassen serves to express both possibility and necessity, but both dependent upon the will or wish of the subject of the sentence, and, accordingly, in the form of a permission or of a command: e. g., *er ließ den Dieb laufen* he allowed the thief to escape; *er ließ ihn hinhängen* he had him executed, he ordered him to be put to death.

1. *Können* to be able, can, may, to know, to be versed in a thing. (For the various meanings and applications of this, and also of the other auxiliary verbs of mode, I must refer the pupil to a good dictionary.)

INFINITIVES.

Present, können

Past, gekonnt haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, könnend

Past, gekonnt (können)

Note.—The verbs *können*, *mögen*, *dürfen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, *lassen*—also *heissen*, *helfen*, *hören*, *sehen*, and with some still *lehren* and *lernen*—present the remarkable peculiarity of substituting the infinitive present for the participle past, whenever they are used in conjunction with the infinitive of another verb: e. g., *er hat ihn freilassen müssen* (instead of *gemußt*), *sie hat es nicht thun dürfen* (instead of *gedurft*), &c. But when these verbs do not stand in conjunction with the infinitive of another verb, the regular participle past is invariably used.

Present.

INDICATIVE.

ich kann
du kannst
er (sie, es, man) kann
wir können
ihr könnt
sie können

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich könne
du könntest
er (sie, es, man) könne
wir können
ihr könntet
sie könnten

Imperfect.

INDICATIVE.

ich konnte
 du konntest
 er (sie, es, man) konnte
 wir konnten
 ihr konntet
 sie konnten

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich könnte
 du könntest
 er (sie, es, man) könnte
 wir könnten
 ihr könntet
 sie könnten

The compound tenses of the auxiliary verbs of mode are formed, of course, according to the general rules; the past with *haben*, the future tense and the conditional mode with *werden*.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, könne*Plural*, könnet or könnt

Note.—Properly speaking, *können*, *sollen*, *mögen*, *dürfen*, and *müssen*, are not susceptible of the imperative mode, since the action expressed respectively by these verbs cannot be commanded.

2. *Dürfen* to be allowed to do a thing, may, dare, &c.

INFINITIVES.

Present, dürfen*Past*, gedurft haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, dürend*Past*, gedurft (dürfen—see note to part. past of *können*)*Present.*

INDICATIVE.

ich darf
 du darfst
 er (sie, es, man) darf
 wir dürfen
 ihr dürft
 sie dürfen

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich dürfe
 du dürfest
 er (sie, es, man) dürfe
 wir dürfen
 ihr dürfet
 sie dürfen

Imperfect.

ich durfte, &c.

ich dürfte, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, dürfe*Plural*, dürfet or dürft3. *Mögen* may, to desire, to like, to be able, to be permitted to do a thing, &c.

INFINITIVES.

Present, mögen*Past*, gemocht haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, mögend*Past*, gemocht (mögen—see note to part. past of *können*)

Present.

INDICATIVE.

ich mag
du magst
er (sie, es, man) mag
wir mögen
ihr mögt
sie mögen

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich möge
du mögest
er (sie, es, man) möge
wir mögen
ihr möget
sie mögen

Imperfect.

ich mochte, &c.

ich möchte, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, möge

Plural, möget or mögt

Müssen must, to be compelled, to be obliged, to be required, &c.

INFINITIVES.

Present, müssen

Past, gemusst haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, müßend

Past, gemusst (müssen—see note to part. past of *können*)

Present.

INDICATIVE.

ich muß
du mußt
er (sie, es, man) muß
wir müssen
ihr müßt
sie müssen

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich müße
du müßest
er (sie, es, man) müße
wir müssen
ihr müßet
sie müssen

Imperfect.

ich mußte, &c.

ich müßte, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, müße

Plural, müßet or müßt

Sollen shall, ought, to be obliged, to be compelled, to be bid, &c.

INFINITIVES.

Present, sollen

Past, gesollt haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, sollend

Past, gesollt (sollen—see note to part. past of *können*)

Present.

INDICATIVE.

ich soll
du sollst
er (sie, es, man) soll
wir sollen
ihr sollt
sie sollen

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich solle
du sollest
er (sie, es, man) solle
wir sollen
ihr sollet
sie sollen

THE VERB.

Imperfect.

ich follte, &c.

ich follte, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, folle*Plural*, follet or follt6. *Wollen* to will, to be willing, to wish.

INFINITIVES.

Present, wollen*Past*, gewollt haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, wollend*Past*, gewollt (wollen—see note to part. past of *können*)*Present.*

INDICATIVE.

ich will
 du willst
 er (sie, es, man) will
 wir wollen
 ihr wollt
 sie wollen

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich wolle
 du wollest
 er (sie, es, man) wolle
 wir wollen
 ihr wollet
 sie wollen

Imperfect.

ich wollte, &c.

ich wollte, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, wolle*Plural*, wollet or wollt7. *Lassen* to let, to permit, to suffer, to grant, to allow, to leave, to give, to concede, to cause, to get done, to procure to be done, &c.

INFINITIVES.

Present, lassen*Past*, gelassen haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, lassend*Past*, gelassen (lassen—see note to part. past of *können*)*Present.*

INDICATIVE.

ich lasse
 du lässest
 er (sie, es, man) läßt
 wir lassen
 ihr laßt
 sie lassen

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich lasse
 du lässest
 er (sie, es, man) lasse
 wir lassen
 ihr laßet
 sie lassen

Imperfect.

ich lief
 du liefest
 er (sie, es, man) lief
 wir liefen
 ihr lieft
 sie liefen

ich ließe
 du ließeft
 er (sie, es, man) ließe
 wir liefen
 ihr ließet
 sie liefen

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, *laffe or laß* (*laffe er, laffe sie*)Plural, *laffet or laßt* (*laffen sie, laffen Sie*)

The German language has two forms of conjugation, the *strong* and the *weak*.

a. STRONG CONJUGATION.

1. TERMINATIONS OR INFLECTIONS OF THE STRONG CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE — en

PARTICIPLES.

Present — end

Past, ge—en

Present.

INDICATIVE.

Singular, 1st person	—e
2nd	—eft, ft
3rd	—et, t
Plural, 1st person	—en
2nd	—et, t
3rd	—en

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Singular, 1st person	—e
2nd	—eft
3rd	—e
Plural, 1st person	—en
2nd	—et
3rd	—en

Imperfect.

INDICATIVE.

Singular, 1st person	—
2nd	—ft, eft
3rd	—
Plural, 1st person	—en
2nd	—et, t
3rd	—en

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Singular, 1st person	—e
2nd	—eft, ft
3rd	—e
Plural, 1st person	—en
2nd	—et, t
3rd	—en

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, 2nd person —, —e

Plural, 2nd person —et, t

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The *e* must be thrown out before *ft* and *t*.

a. In the second and third persons singular, indicative present, of those verbs which change in these persons the vowel of the infinitive: e. g., *ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht; ich grabe, du gräbst, er gräbt*, &c. This syncope takes place even after *t* and *th*: e. g., *du gilst, hältst, rüthst*. In the third person, the *t* of the termination also is omitted after *t* and *th*: e. g., *er gilt, hält, schilt, rüth* (instead of *gilt-t, hält-t*, &c.). But after *f*, *f*, *ff*, *sch*, *z*, the *e* must be retained before the *ft* of the second person: e. g., *du liefst, wächst, bläfst, stößt, issest*, &c. In the third person, however, the *e* is eliminated even in the case of such verbs: e. g., *er stößt, isst, mißt, vergißt*, &c. After *f* the elision of the *e* is usually marked by an apostrophe: e. g., *er ließt, wächst, bläst*, &c.

b. In the second person singular, indicative imperfect, of all verbs of the strong conjugation: e. g., *du sangst, sprachst, halbst, schwammst*, &c. After *a*, *t*, *th*, the *e* may, indeed, be retained before the *ft*; yet the prevailing practice of the language prefers, even after these in-

guals, the elision of the *e*, though the pronunciation be rendered thereby somewhat harsh: e. g., *du fandst, tratest, schrittst, riethst, &c.* After *f, ff, sch, and z*, the *e* must, of course, be retained: e. g., *du lasest, adest, riffest, wuschest, schmolzest, &c.*

2. The *e* is, besides, mostly omitted—

a. In the second person singular, indicative present, of those verbs of the strong conjugation which leave the vowel of the infinitive unaltered in the present tense: *du schreist, leihst, fliest, schallst, schwimmst, &c.* However, after *d, t, f, sch, z*, and *tz*, the *e* must be retained: e. g., *du leidest, schreitest, bittest, preigest, heigest, löschest, sitzest, &c.*

b. In the third person singular, indicative present, of those verbs of the strong conjugation which leave the vowel of the infinitive unaltered in the present tense: e. g., *er schreit, kommt, schallt, friert, greift, &c.* However, after *d* and *t* the *e* is retained: e. g., *er findet, gleitet, &c.* After *f*, also, the *e* is either retained or its elision marked by an apostrophe: e. g., *er preiset* or *preist', &c.*

c. In the second person plural, indicative present and imperfect, and in the imperative (plural), the retention or omission of the *e* is more a matter of choice, and we may write with equal propriety either *ihr singet, trinket; sanget, tranket; gewinnet, bleibet; or singt, trinkt; fangt, trankt; gewinnt, bleibt.*

3. With regard to the termination *en* of the infinitive, participle past, and first and third persons plural, indicative present and imperfect, the elision of the *e* is admissible only after a vowel or mute *h*; and even then only in poetry, for the sake of the metre, and in the language of familiar conversation. In the written prose language the elision of the *e* is here altogether indefensible. The same remarks apply equally to the verbs of the weak conjugation.

4. In the subjunctive mode the *e* is an essential and characteristic sound, which had best be invariably retained. Yet, where it so happens that the subjunctive is already clearly distinguished from the indicative, by a difference in the vowel of the radical syllable, the *e* is frequently dropped before *st* and *t* even in the subjunctive: e. g., ind. *ich gebe, du gibst*, sub. *du gebest* or *gebst*; ind. *ich sang, du sangst*, sub. *du sängest* or *sängst*; ind. *ihr sangt*, sub. *ihr sänget* or *sängt*; ind. *ich fuhr, du fuhrst, ihr fuhr*, sub. *du führest* or *führst, ihr führet* or *führt, &c.*

5. Those verbs of the strong conjugation, which change the vowel *e* of the infinitive in the imperative to *i* or *ie*, reject in the singular of the imperative the inflection *e*: e. g., *bergen, birg; brechen, brich; nehmen, nimm; stehlen, stiehl; vergessen, vergiß, &c.* Of the verb *sehen* we have both the regular form *sieh* and the irregular from *siehe*: e. g., *siehe da!*

Those strong verbs, on the other hand, which retain the vowel of the infinitive unchanged in the imperative, take the inflection *e*, with the exception of *lassen* and *kommen*, of which the imperative is respectively *laß* and *komm*, instead of *lasse* and *komme*. However, there exists a certain tendency in the verbs of the strong conjugation to throw off the final *e* of the imperative (singular), wherever the omission of that vowel is not incompatible with the demands of pronun-

~~relation~~; thus we may say, for instance, *trink*, *schwimm*, *leih*, instead of *trinke*, &c.; but few would be likely to say *bind*, *brat*, *grab*, &c., instead of *binde*, *brate*, *grabe*.

CHANGE OF THE VOWELS.

But the characteristic and distinguishing feature of the strong conjugation does not reside in its inflections, but consists in the change which the vowel of the radical syllable of the infinitive undergoes in some parts of the verb. In some of the verbs of the strong conjugation this change extends over the present and imperfect tenses, the imperative mode, and the participle past; in others it is limited to the present and imperfect tenses and to the imperative; in others, to the present and imperfect tenses; and in others, finally, to the imperfect and participle past.

We may, accordingly, divide the verbs of the strong conjugation into four principal classes:—

FIRST CLASS.

a. Verbs which change the *e* of the infinitive, in the second and third persons singular indicative present, and in the singular imperative, to *i*; in the imperfect indicative, to *a*; subjunctive, to *ä* (in some instances also to *ö* or *ü*); in the participle past, to *o*: *bergen*, *bersten*, *brechen*, *dreschen*, *gelten*, *helfen*, *nehmen*, *schelten*, *schrecken* or *erschrecken*, *sprechen*, *stechen*, *sterben*, *treffen*, *verderben*, *werben*, *werfen*.

EXAMPLE.

Bergen.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Part. Past</i>
		<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>	
ich berge	birg	ich barg	ich bärge (börge)	geborgen
du birgst				
er birgt				

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Bersten* forms the present and imperative also after the weak conjugation; in the imperfect, *borst* and *börste* are sometimes used instead of *barst* and *bärste*.

2. The same remarks apply equally to *dreschen*.

3. Of *gelten*, the form *gölte* is sometimes used in the imperfect subjunctive instead of *gülte*; of *helfen*, *hülfe* instead of *hülfe*; of *schelten*, *schölte* instead of *schülte*.

4. The imperfect of the intransitive verb *schrecken*, or rather *erschrecken*, is *ich erschrak*, *erschräume* (*schrak*, *schräume*); the transitive verb *erschrecken* is conjugated after the weak form. The verb *verderben* also is conjugated weak when it is employed in a transitive signification.

5. Of *sterben*, *verderben*, *werben*, *werfen*, the form *stürbe*, *verdürbe*, *würbe*, *würfe*, is used in preference to *stürbe*, *verdürbe*, *würbe*, *würfe*.

6. *Nehmen* has, in the second and third persons indicative present, *du nimmst*, *er nimmt*; in the imperative singular, *nimm*; in the preterite, *ich nahm*, sub. *ich nähme*; in the participle past, *genommen*.

b. Present in *ie*, the other parts as sub. a: *befehlen*, *empfehlen*, *gebären* (instead of *geberen*), *stehlen*.

EXAMPLE.

Present	Imperative	Imperfect		Part. Past
		Indicative	Subjunctive	
ich befehle	befiehl	ich befahl	ich beföhle	befohlen
du befehlst			(befähle)	
er befiehlt				

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Of *empfehlen* and *stehlen*, the form *empföhle*, *stöhle*, is sometimes used in the imperfect subjunctive instead of *empfühle*, *stühle*; of *befehlen*, the form *beföhle* is used in preference to *befühle*.

2. *Gebären* forms the present and imperfect also after the weak conjugation.

c. Present (second and third persons singular) and imperative (singular), *i*; imperfect indicative, *o*; subjunctive, *ö*; participle past, *o*: *löfchen* or *erlöfchen*, *fechten*, *flechten*, *quellen*, *schmelzen*, *schwellen*.

EXAMPLE.

Present	Imperative	Imperfect		Part. Past
		Indicative	Subjunctive	
ich fechte	ficht	ich focht	ich föchte	gefochten
du fichtst				
er ficht				

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The *transitive* verbs *quellen* to soak, *schmelzen* to melt, to fuse, *schwellen* to cause to swell, to extend, to puff up, *löfchen* or *auslöfchen* to extinguish, to efface, to quench, to slake, &c., are conjugated after the weak form: e. g., *das Metall* *schmilzt*, *schmolz*, *ist geschmolzen*—the metal fuses, fused, has fused, *er* *schmelzt*, *schmelzte* *das Metall*, he fuses, fused the metal, *er hat es geschmolzt* he has fused it. *Löfchen* or *erlöfchen* affects even in its *intransitive* signification, in the present and imperative, often the forms of the weak conjugation.

2. *Fechten* and *flechten* also take, sometimes, in the present, the forms of the weak conjugation.

SECOND CLASS.

a. Verbs which change the *e* of the infinitive, in the second and third persons singular indicative present, and in the imperative singular, to *i*; in the imperfect indicative, to *a*; subjunctive, to *ä*: *essen*, *fressen*, *messen*, *treten*, *vergeffen*.

EXAMPLE.

Present	Imperative	Imperfect		Part. Past
		Indicative	Subjunctive	
ich esse	iß	ich aß	ich äße	geessen
du ißest				(instead of geessen)
er ißt				

OBSERVATION.

Fressen, *messen*, *vergeffen*, change, like *essen*, the double *s* (*ff*) to *f* in the imperfect.

b. Present (second and third persons singular) and imperative (singular), *is*; imperfect, as sub. *a*: *geben, geschehen, lesen, sehen*.

EXAMPLE.

Geben.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Part. Past</i>
		<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>	
ich gebe	gieb	ich gab	ich gäbe	gegeben
du gibst				
er giebt				

OBSERVATION.

The use of the verb *geschehen*—to occur, to happen—being, of necessity, almost exclusively limited to the third person, the second person of the singular present *geschiehst*, and the imperative *geschieh*, are hardly ever met with. The third person of the imperative is *es geschehe*.

THIRD CLASS.

a. Verbs which change the *a* of the infinitive, in the present (second and third persons singular), to *ü*; in the imperfect indicative, to *u*; subjunctive, to *ü*: *backen, fahren, graben, laden (einladen), mahlen, schaffen (erschaffen), schlagen, tragen, wachsen, waschen*.

EXAMPLES.

Fahren.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Part. Past</i>
	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>	
ich fahre	ich fuhr	ich führe	gefahren
du fährst			
er fährt			

Backen.

ich backe	ich buk	ich bücke	gebacken
du bäckst			
er bäckt			

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Backen* to bake, in a transitive sense, is generally conjugated after the weak form, with the exception of the past participle, which is invariably *gebacken*: e. g., *der Bäcker backt, backte das Brod* the baker bakes, baked the bread; but intransitively, *das Brod bäckt, buk*.

2. The forms *du lüdst, er lüdt—du mühlst, er müht*—are obsolete; and the weak forms *du ladest, er ladet—du mahlst, er mahlt*—are now almost universally used instead. The preterite of *mahlen* is invariably weak: *ich mahlte*. The participle past (*gemahlen*) alone belongs to the strong form (the participle past of *malen* to paint, is *gemalt*). *Laden* to load, has in the preterite, usually, *ladete*; *laden (einladen)* to invite, prefers the strong form *lud*. The participle past of both is invariably *geladen (eingeladen)*.

3. *Schaffen* has *du schaffst, er schafft*, in the second and third persons singular present.

b. Verbs which change the *a* of the infinitive, in the present

(second and third persons singular indicative), to *ä*; in the imperfect indicative and subjunctive, to *ie*: *blasen, braten, fahren, fallen, fangen, halten, hängen, lassen, rathen, schlafen (salzen, spalten)*.

EXAMPLE.

Blasen.

Present	Indicative	Imperfect	Subjunctive	Participle Past
ich blase	ich blies		ich bliese	geblasen
du bläsest				
er bläſt				

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Braten* to roast, used in a transitive sense, adopts, with the exception of the participle past, also the forms of the weak conjugation.

2. *Fahren* is a defective verb, having no form for the imperfect tense.

3. The imperfect of *fallen* and *lassen* is *fiel* and *ließ*.

4. The imperfect of *fangen* and *hängen* is *fieng* and *hing*.

5. *Falten, falzen, and spalten* have almost entirely ceased to be strong verbs; even the participle past of them is mostly formed after the weak conjugation, except where it happens to be used adjectively; thus we say *mit gefalteten Händen* with folded hands; but *er hat das Papier gefaltet* he has folded the paper, &c.

6. To this class belong also the verbs *hauen, laufen, rufen, stoßen*. *Hauen* and *rufen* retain the *au* and *u* unaltered in the present; *hauen* to hew, to cut, in a transitive sense, has *ich haute* in the preterite; in an intransitive capacity it mostly adopts the strong form, *ich hieb*. The second and third persons singular of the present of *laufen* and *stoßen* are *du läufst, er läuft—du stößest, er stößt*. The verb *schrotten* belongs no longer to the strong conjugation, except in the participle past, and even this is mostly formed after the weak conjugation, except where it happens to be used adjectively.

FOURTH CLASS.

a. Verbs which change the *i* of the infinitive, in the imperfect indicative, to *a*: subjunctive, to *ä*: in the participle past, to *u*: *binden, dringen, finden, gelingen, klingen, ringen, schlingen, schwinden, schwingen, singen, sinken, springen, stinken, trinken, winden, zwingen*.

EXAMPLE.

Binden.

Indicative	Imperfect	Subjunctive	Participle Past
ich band		ich bände	gebunden

b. Imperfect indicative, *a*; subjunctive, *ä* and *ö*; participle past, *o*: *beginnen, gewinnen, rinnen, schwimmen, sinnen, spinnen*.

EXAMPLE.

Beginnen.

Indicative	Imperfect	Subjunctive	Participle Past
ich begann		ich begänne or begönne	begonnen

c. Imperfect indicative, *a*; subjunctive, *ä*; participle past, *e*. To this subdivision of the fourth class belong only three verbs, viz., *bitten*, *liegen*, and *sitzen*.

<i>Imperfect</i>		
<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>	<i>Participle Past</i>
ich bat	ich bäte	gebeten
ich lag	ich läge	gelegen
ich saß	ich säße	gesehen

d. Verbs which change the *ei* of the infinitive, in the imperfect and participle past, to *i*: *befleissen*, *beissen*, *bleichen*, *gleichen*, *gleiten*, *greifen*, *keifen*, *kneifen* (*kneipen*), *leiden*, *pfeifen*, *reifen*, *reiten*, *schleichen*, *schleifen*, *schleissen*, *schmeissen*, *schneiden*, *schreiten*, *spfeissen*, *streichen*, *streiten*, *weichen*.

EXAMPLES.

Bleichen.

<i>Imperfect</i>		
<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>	<i>Participle Past</i>
ich blich	ich bliche	geblichen

Befleissen.

ich befließ (mich)	ich befließe (mich)	beffissen
--------------------	---------------------	-----------

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Of the verbs belonging to this division, those with *ß*, *f*, *p*, *t*, double these consonants in the preterite and participle past; *leiden* and *schneiden* change the *d* to double *t*: *ich litt*, *ich schnitt*; *gelitten*, *geschnitten*.

2. *Keifen*, *kneifen*, and *kneipen*, and more particularly the last, are very frequently conjugated after the weak form.

3. *Bleichen* (*erbleichen*, *verbleichen*) takes the forms of the strong conjugation only in its *intransitive* signification; as a *transitive* verb, it adopts those of the weak conjugation.

4. *Begleiten* to accompany, is not derived from *gleiten*; it is a contraction of *be-geleiten*, and is, like *leiten* to lead, and *geleiten* to conduct, to escort, conjugated after the weak form.

5. *Schleifen*, in the sense of to sharpen, to grind, to polish, takes the forms of the strong conjugation; in all other significations, e. g., to draw, to drag, to demolish, &c., it is conjugated after the weak form.

6. *Weichen* to yield, to give way, takes the forms of the strong conjugation; *weichen* (*erweichen*) to steep, to soak, to soften, is conjugated after the weak form.

e. Imperfect and participle past in *ie*: *bleiben*, *gedeihen*, *leihen*, *meiden*, *preisen*, *reiben*, *scheiden*, *scheinen*, *schreiben*, *schreien*, *schweigen*, *speien*, *steigen*, *treiben*, *weisen*, *zeihen*.

EXAMPLE.

Bleiben.

<i>Imperfect</i>		
<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>	<i>Participle Past</i>
ich blieb	ich bliebe	geblieben

OBSERVATIONS.

The *factive* or *causative* verb *schweigen* to silence, to pacify, is conjugated after the weak form; the *intransitive* verb *schweigen* to observe silence, to abstain from speaking, and the *transitive* verb *schweigen* or *verschweigen* to pass over in silence, to conceal by silence, are both conjugated after the strong form.

f. Verbs which change the *ie* (or *a*, *i*, *e*, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *au*) of the infinitive, in the imperfect indicative, to *o*; subjunctive, to *ö*; in the participle past, to *o*: *biegen*, *biegen*, * *fliegen*, * *fliehen*, * *fliesen*, * *frieren*, *genießen*, * *gießen*, * *kriechen*, * *riechen*, *schieben*, *schießen*, *schließen*, * (*schnieben*), *sieden*, *sprießen*, * *stieben*, *triefen*, * *verdriefen*, * *verlieren*, *wiegen*, *ziehen*; * *schallen*; *glimmen*, *klimmen*; *beklemmen*, *bewegen*, *heben*, *melken*, *pflügen*, *scheren*, *weben*; *gähren*, *schwären*, *wägen*; *schwören*; *küren* (or *kiesen*, *erkiesen*), *lügen*, * *trügen*; *saufen*, *saugen*, *schrauben*, *schrauben*.

Note.—Those marked * retain still, in the language of poetry, in the second and third persons singular indicative present, and in the singular imperative, by the side of the regular form in *ie* or *ü*, the obsolete form in *eu*: e. g., *bieten*: *du beutst*, *er beut*—*beut*; *fliehen*: *du fleuchst*, *er fleucht*—*fleuch*; *fließen*: *du fleußest*, *er fleußt*—*fleuß*; *lügen*: *du leugst*, *er leugt*—*leug*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Biegen.

Indicative	Imperfect	Subjunctive	Participle Past
ich bog		ich böge	gebogen
		<i>Schießen.</i>	
ich schoß		ich schöffe	geschossen

Note.—All the verbs with *f*, which belong to this class, double that consonant—i. e., change it to *ff* or *ff*—in the preterite and participle past; *triefen* doubles the *f*—*ich troff*, *ich tröffe*—*getroffen*; *sieden* changes the *d* to double *t*—*ich sott*, *ich sötte*—*gesotten*; *ziehen* changes the *h* to *g*—*ich zog*, *ich zöge*—*gezogen*.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Saufen* has, in the second and third persons singular, indicative present, *du säufst*, *er säuft*; in the imperfect indicative, *ich soff*; subjunctive, *ich söffe*; participle past, *gesoffen*. *Ersaufen* to perish by drowning, is conjugated like *saufen*; but *ersäufen* to drown, to kill or destroy by drowning, is conjugated after the weak form.

2. *Sieden* to boil, in a *transitive* sense, is almost invariably conjugated after the weak form; and even the *intransitive* verb (to seethe, to boil) adopts sometimes the weak form.

3. *Triefen*, *schrauben*, *schrauben*—*glimmen*, *klimmen*—*beklemmen*, *melken*, *weben*—*wägen*—*schallen*—are conjugated also after the weak form; *erwägen* to consider, takes invariably the strong form; *weben* is conjugated after the strong form in poetry alone.

4. The imperfect of *gähren* is often formed also after the weak

conjugation; *schwören* to swear, has a double imperfect—*ich schwor*, *ich schwöre*, and *ich schwur*, *ich schwüre*.

5. *Bewegen*, in the sense of to move, to stir, to put in motion, to affect pathetically—or, as a reflexive verb, to take exercise—is invariably conjugated after the weak form; in the sense of to induce, to persuade, it follows the strong form.

6. *Pflegen* follows the strong form only in a few idiomatic expressions: e. g., *wir pflegen mit ihnen Rath* we took counsel with them, *gepflegene Unterhandlungen* negotiations carried on, &c.

7. *Wiegen* follows the strong form only when it is employed in the intransitive sense of to weigh, to be of a certain weight; the transitive verb *wiegen* to rock, to move gently, is always conjugated after the weak form; *wägen* to weigh (in a transitive sense), to examine with a levelling instrument, is generally conjugated after the weak form.

8. *Dingen* and *schinden* change the *i* of the infinitive, in the imperfect indicative and participle past, to *u*; in the imperfect subjunctive, to *ü*. *Dingen* forms, however, the imperfect also after the weak form.

The following verbs cannot be brought under any of the preceding classes:—

		<i>Genesen.</i>	
		<i>Imperfect</i>	
<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>	<i>Participle Past</i>
ich <i>genas</i>		ich <i>genäse</i>	<i>genesen</i>

This verb is conjugated in the imperfect also after the weak form.

			<i>Heißen.</i>
ich <i>hief</i>		ich <i>hieße</i>	<i>geheißen</i>
			<i>Kommen.</i>
ich <i>kam</i>		ich <i>käme</i>	<i>gekommen</i>

MODELS OF THE STRONG CONJUGATION.

Sprechen to speak.

		INFINITIVES.	
<i>Present</i> , <i>sprechen</i>		<i>Past</i> , <i>gesprochen haben</i>	
		PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Present</i> , <i>sprechend</i>		<i>Past</i> , <i>gesprochen</i>	
		<i>Present.</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE.
ich <i>spreche</i>		ich <i>spreche</i>	ich <i>spreche</i>
du <i>sprichst</i>		du <i>sprecheft or sprichst</i>	du <i>sprecheft or sprichst</i>
er (fie, es, man) <i>spricht</i>		er (fie, es, man) <i>spreche</i>	er (fie, es, man) <i>spreche</i>
wir <i>sprechen</i>		wir <i>sprechen</i>	wir <i>sprechen</i>
ihr <i>sprecht</i>		ihr <i>sprechet</i>	ihr <i>sprechet</i>
sie (Sie) <i>sprechen</i>		sie <i>sprechen</i>	sie <i>sprechen</i>

Imperfect.

INDICATIVE.

ich sprach
 du sprachst
 er (sie, es, man) sprach
 wir sprachen
 ihr sprachet
 sie sprachen

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich spräche
 du sprächest or sprächst
 er (sie, es, man) spräche
 wir sprächen
 ihr sprächet or sprächt
 sie sprächen

Perfect.

ich habe gesprochen, &c.

ich habe gesprochen, &c.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte gesprochen, &c.

ich hätte gesprochen, &c.

First Future.

ich werde sprechen, &c.

ich werde sprechen, &c.

Second Future.

ich werde gesprochen haben, &c.

ich werde gesprochen haben, &c.

First Conditional (Second Form of the Subjunctive Imperfect).

ich würde sprechen, &c.

Second Conditional (Second Form of the Subjunctive Pluperfect).

ich würde gesprochen haben, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, sprich (du), (spreche er, spreche sie)
Plural, sprichet or sprecht (ihr), (sprechen sie, Sie)

The following may serve also, at the same time, as a model for the conjugation of the verb reflexive: *sich befeifen* to study, to endeavour diligently.

INFINITIVES.

Present, sich befeifen*Past*, sich befiessen haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, sich befeifend*Past*, befiessen*Present.*

INDICATIVE.

ich befeife mich
 du befeifest dich
 er (sie, es, man) befeifet sich
 wir befeifen uns
 ihr befeift euch
 sie befeifen sich

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich befeife mich
 du befeifest dich
 er (sie, es, man) befeife sich
 wir befeifen uns
 ihr befeift euch
 sie befeifen sich

Imperfect.

INDICATIVE.

ich befiß mich
du befißest dich
er (fie, es, man) befiß sich
wir befißen uns
ihr befißt euch
fie befißen sich

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich befißte mich
du befißtest dich
er (fie, es, man) befißte sich
wir befißen uns
ihr befißtet euch
fie befißen sich

Perfect.

ich habe mich befißen
du haft dich befißen, &c.

ich habe mich befißen
du habest dich befißen, &c.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte mich befißen, &c.

ich hätte mich befißen, &c.

First Future.

ich werde mich befißen, &c.

ich werde mich befißen, &c.

Second Future.

ich werde mich, &c., befißen haben

ich werde mich, &c., befißen haben

First Conditional (Second Form of the Subjunctive Imperfect).

ich würde mich befißen

Second Conditional (Second Form of the Subjunctive Pluperfect).

ich würde mich befißen haben

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, befeife (du) dich, (befeife er, fie sich)

Plural, befeiset (ihr) euch, (befeien fie, Sie sich)

The following may serve also, at the same time, as a model of a personal verb, conjugated with *sein* :—

Gefchehen to happen, to occur.

INFINITIVES.

Present, gefchehen

Past, gefchehen fein to have happened

PARTICIPLES.

Present, gefchehend

Past, gefchehen

Present.

INDICATIVE.

es geschieht

SUBJUNCTIVE.

es gefchehe

Imperfect.

es gefchah

es gefchähe

Perfect.

es ift gefchehen

es fei gefchehen

Pluperfect.

es war gefchehen

es wäre gefchehen

THE VERB.

First Future.

es wird gefchehen

es werde gefch

Second Future.

es wird gefchehen fein

es werde gefche

First Conditional (Second Form of the Subjunctive Imperfect)

es würde gefchehen

Second Conditional (Second Form of the Subjunctive Pluperfect)

es würde gefchehen fein

IMPERATIVE.

es gefchehe

ADDITIONAL OBSERVATION.

The verbs derived from others by means of *prefixes* and the *pound* verbs, are conjugated exactly the same way as the verbs from which they are formed.

The only real exception from this rule, is the verb *willfah* comply with, which is conjugated after the weak form.

Verbs like *rathſchlagen*, *umringen*, *heirathen*, *herbergen*, *veranlaß*, *bewillkommen*, *bemitleiden*, *beauftragen* (which are all conjugated weak), are no exceptions from the rule, since they are derived from the substantives *Rathſchlag*, *Ring*, *Heirath*, *Herberge*, *Anlaß*, *Willkommen*, *Mitleid*, *Auftrag*; and not from the strong verbs, *ſchlag*, *ringen*, *rathen*, *bergen*, *laſſen*, *kommen*, *leiden*, *tragen*.

b. WEAK CONJUGATION.

INFLECTIONS OR TERMINATIONS OF THE WEAK CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE —en, n

PARTICIPLES.

Present, —end, nd*Past*, ge—et, ge—t*Present.*

INDICATIVE.

<i>Singular</i> , 1st person	—e
2nd	—eft, ft
3rd	—et, t
<i>Plural</i> , 1st person	—en, n
2nd	—et, t
3rd	—en, n

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Singular</i> , 1st person	—e
2nd	—eft
3rd	—e
<i>Plural</i> , 1st person	—en
2nd	—et
3rd	—en

Imperfect.

<i>Singular</i> , 1st person	—te, ete	<i>Singular</i> , 1st person	—ete, te
2nd	—teft, eteft	2nd	—eteft, t
3rd	—te, ete	3rd	—ete, te
<i>Plural</i> , 1st person	—ten, eten	<i>Plural</i> , 1st person	—eten, t
2nd	—tet, etet	2nd	—etet, t
3rd	—ten, eten	3rd	—eten, t

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, 2nd person —e*Plural*, 2nd person —et, t

OBSERVATIONS.

With regard to the omission or retention of the *e* before *st* and *t* we have, in the first place, to distinguish between verbs terminating in *en*, and verbs terminating in *eln* or *ern*.

A. VERBS IN *en*.

1. The weak verbs in *en* retain the *e* of the inflection invariably in the *subjunctive* present and imperfect.

2. In the *indicative* present and imperfect, in the *imperative*, and in the *participle past*, the *e* is usually elided before *st* and *t*, except where its retention is indispensable to the easy and correct pronunciation of the word. The full termination *et* must, accordingly, be retained after *d*, *t*, *th*, *st*; and the full termination *est* after the same letters and, besides, after *f*, *ff*, *ſ*, *sch*, *z*.

But even in those cases, where the elision of the *e* is perfectly compatible with the requirements of pronunciation, its retention is by no means a fault; in fact, it is mostly a question for the ear to decide whether the *e* is to stand or not. However, as a general rule, it is more rarely retained in the third person singular than in the second person plural of the present tense, and in the imperative; thus, one would hardly ever write, *er lobet, weinet, eilet, irret*, &c., but *er lobt, weint, eilt, irrt*; whilst *ihr lobet, weinet, eilet, irret*,—in the imperative, *lobet, weinet*, &c.,—are as frequently used as the contracted forms.

3. With regard to the termination *en*, the elision of the *e* is admissible only after a vowel or a mute *h*, and even then only in poetry, for the sake of the metre, and in the language of familiar conversation.

4. Verbs derived from substantives and adjectives in *en* and *em*, and of which the *complete* termination in the infinitive would accordingly be *enen*, *emen*, reject, throughout, the *e* of the termination of the substantive or adjective from which they are formed, and retain the *e* of the conjugative inflection: e. g., *regnen* to rain, instead of *regen*, formed from *der Regen*; *athmen* to breathe, instead of *athemen*, formed from *der Athem*; *ebnen* to level, instead of *eben*, formed from *eben*; *es regnet, er athmet, ihr ebnet, du ebnest, geöffnet*; not *regent, athemt, ebent, ebentst, geöffent*, &c.

B. VERBS IN *eln* AND *ern*.

These verbs owe their termination to a contraction of the suffixes *el*, *er*, with the inflection *en*. Thus *sammeln*, *betteln*, for instance, are simply contractions of *sammelen*, *bettelen*. They reject, accordingly, almost throughout, the *e* of the inflection before *st*, *t*, and *n*. The *subjunctive* of the present, however, the first person singular indicative present, and the imperative, retain either both *e*'s, or reject the *e* of the suffix *el* or *er*, instead of that of the inflection. The imperfect of these verbs offers no external marks of difference whereby to distinguish between the indicative and subjunctive.

THE VERB.

EXAMPLES.

Reden to speak.

INFINITIVES.

Present, reden*Past*, geredet haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, redend*Past*, geredet*Present.*

INDICATIVE.

ich rede
 du redest
 er (fie, es, man) redet
 wir reden
 ihr redet
 fie reden

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich rede
 du redest
 er (fie, es, man) rede
 wir reden
 ihr redet
 fie reden

Imperfect.

ich redete
 du redetest
 er (fie, es, man) redete
 wir redeten
 ihr redetet
 fie redeten

ich redete
 du redetest
 er (fie, es, man) redete
 wir redeten
 ihr redetet
 fie redeten

Perfect.

ich habe geredet, &c.

ich habe geredet, &c.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte geredet, &c.

ich hätte geredet, &c.

First Future.

ich werde reden, &c.

ich werde reden, &c.

Second Future.

ich werde geredet haben, &c.

ich werde geredet haben,

First Conditional.

ich würde reden, &c.

Second Conditional.

ich würde geredet haben, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, rede (du), (rede er, rede fie) *Plural*, redet (ihr), (reden fie,

The following may serve also, at the same time, as a model of conjugation of a *separable* compound verb :—

Zuhören to listen.

INFINITIVES.

Present, zuhören*Past*, zugehört haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, zuhörend*Past*, zugehört

Present.

INDICATIVE.

ich höre zu
 du hörst zu
 er (sie, es, man) hört zu
 wir hören zu
 ihr höret *or* hört zu
 sie hören zu

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich höre zu
 du hörest zu
 er (sie, es, man) höre zu
 wir hören zu
 ihr höret zu
 sie hören zu

Imperfect.

ich hörte zu
 du hörtest zu
 er hörte zu
 wir hörten zu
 ihr hörtet zu
 sie hörten zu

ich hörte zu
 du hörtest zu
 er hörte zu
 wir hörten zu
 ihr hörtet zu
 sie hörten zu

Perfect.

ich habe zugehört, &c.

ich habe zugehört, &c.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte zugehört, &c.

ich hätte zugehört, &c.

First Future.

ich werde zuhören, &c.

ich werde zuhören, &c.

Second Future.

ich werde zugehört haben, &c.

ich werde zugehört haben, &c.

First Conditional.

ich würde zuhören, &c.

Second Conditional.

ich würde zugehört haben, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, höre (du) zu, (höre er zu, höre sie zu)

Plural, höret *or* hört (ihr) zu, (hören sie, Sie zu)

OBSERVATIONS.

The above is the mode of conjugation of the *separable compound* verb in independent sentences; in *subordinate* sentences, connected with the principal proposition either by the relative pronoun or by means of a conjunction, no separation of the two components takes place; compare, for instance, *ich hörte zu* with *weil ich zuhörte*; *meine Schwester, welche zuhörte*, &c.

The first component of *separable compound* verbs is always placed, in independent sentences, at the end: e. g., *ich hörte ihrem Gesange Vergnügen zu* I listened to her song with pleasure.

Tadeln to blame.

INFINITIVES.

Present, tadeln*Past*, getadelt haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, tadelnd*Past*, getadelt*Present.*

INDICATIVE.

ich tadele or tadle
 du tadelst
 er (fie, es, man) tadelt
 wir tadeln
 ihr tadelt
 fie tadeln

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich tadele
 du tadelest or tadlest
 er (fie, es, man) tadele or tadle
 wir tadelen or tadlen
 ihr tadelet or tadlet
 fie tadelen or tadlen

Imperfect.

ich tadelte
 du tadeltest
 er (fie, es, man) tadelte
 wir tadelten
 ihr tadeltet
 fie tadelten

ich tadelte
 du tadeltest
 er (fie, es, man) tadelte
 wir tadelten
 ihr tadeltet
 fie tadelten

Perfect.

ich habe getadelt, &c.

ich habe getadelt, &c.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte getadelt, &c.

ich hätte getadelt, &c.

First Future.

ich werde tadeln, &c.

ich werde tadeln, &c.

Second Future.

ich werde getadelt haben, &c.

ich werde getadelt haben, &c.

First Conditional.

ich würde tadeln, &c.

Second Conditional.

ich würde getadelt haben, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, tadele or tadle (du), (tadle er, tadle fie)*Plural*, tadelt (ihr), (tadeln fie, Sie)

PASSIVE VOICE.

INFINITIVES.

Present, getadelt werden*Past*, getadelt worden sein

PARTICIPLES.

Past, getadelt*Future*, zu tadelnd

<i>Present.</i>	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
ich werde, &c., getadelt	ich werde, &c., getadelt
<i>Imperfect.</i>	
ich wurde, &c., getadelt	ich würde, &c., getadelt
<i>Perfect.</i>	
ich bin, &c., getadelt worden	ich sei, &c., getadelt worden
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
ich war, &c., getadelt worden	ich wäre, &c., getadelt worden
<i>First Future.</i>	
ich werde, &c., getadelt werden	ich werde, &c., getadelt werden
<i>Second Future.</i>	
ich werde, &c., getadelt worden sein	ich werde, &c., getadelt worden sein
<i>First Conditional.</i>	
ich würde getadelt werden, &c.	
<i>Second Conditional.</i>	
ich würde getadelt worden sein, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, werde (du) getadelt, (werde er, sie getadelt)
Plural, werdet (ihr) getadelt, (werden sie, Sie getadelt)

C. IRREGULAR VERBS.

1. *Gehen* to go, and *stehen* to stand, are conjugated after the weak in the present tense, the participle present, and the imperative; which latter they usually drop the *e* in the singular.

<i>Imperfect</i>			
<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
ich ging	ich ginge	ich stand	ich stände
du gingst	du gingest	du standst	du ständest
(sie, es, man)	er (sie, es, man)	er (sie, es, man)	er (sie, es, man)
ging	ginge	stand	stände
wir gingen	wir gingen	wir standen	wir ständen
ginget or	ihr ginget	ihr standet	ihr ständet
gingt			
gingen	sie gingen	sie standen	sie ständen

Note.—The forms *ich stand*, *ich stünde*, are altogether obsolete now.

<i>Participle Past</i>	
gegangen	gestanden

2. *Brennen* to burn, *kennen* to know, *nennen* to name, *rennen* to run, *senden* to send, *wenden* to turn, are conjugated after the weak, but change the *e* of the radical syllable, in the imperfect indi-

cative and participle past, to *a*, with concomitant elision of the *e* of the termination before the *t* of the inflection. In the subjunctive, the original *e* of the radical syllable is restored, and the *e* of the termination may be either retained or omitted before the *t* of the inflection; in *senden* and *wenden*, however, it must absolutely be retained. We conjugate accordingly—

Preterite Indicative, ich brannte, kannte, nannte, rannte, sandte, wandte
Preterite Subjunctive, ich brennete, kennete, nennete, rennete (or brannt, kennte, nennte, rennte), sendete, wendete.
Participle Past, gebrannt, gekannt, genannt, gerannt, gesandt, gewandt.

Note.—Of *senden* and *wenden* we use also the regular forms: imperfect indicative and subjunctive, ich sendete, wendete; participle past, gesendet, gewendet.

3. The verbs *bringen* to bring, and *denken* to think, are conjugated after the weak form in the present tense, participle present, and imperative. In the imperfect and participle past they change the *e* of the radical syllable to *a* (*subjunctive ü*), and the *ng* and *nk* to *ch*.

Imperfect

Indicative	Subjunctive	Indicative	Subjunctive
ich brachte	ich brächte	ich dachte	ich dächte

Participle Past

gebracht	gedacht
----------	---------

4. The unipersonal verb *dürchten* to appear, to seem, has in the imperfect *es dürchte* (*mich, dich, ihn, sie*, more correct than *mir, dir, ihm, ihr, ihnen*), instead of *es dürenchette*.

5. Thun to do.

INFINITIVES.

Present, thun

Past, gethan haben

PARTICIPLES.

Present, thuend

Past, gethan

Present.

INDICATIVE.

ich thue
 du thuft
 er (fie, es, man) thut
 wir thun
 ihr thut
 fie thun

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich thue
 du thuest
 er (fie, es, man) thue
 wir thuen
 ihr thuet
 fie thuen

Imperf.ct.

ich that
 du thatft, &c.

ich thäte
 du thätet (thätft), &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular, thue or thu (du), (thue er, fie)
Plural, thuet or thut (ihr), (thuen fie, Sie)

ADDITIONAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE FORMATION OF THE PART. PAST.

1. As has already been amply shown in the preceding examples, most verbs of the German language take in the participle past the prefix *ge*.

Exceptions.—*a.* All verbs with the accentuated termination *iren* or *ieren*.

b. All German verbs with the inseparable and unaccentuated prefixes *be*, *beun*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *verab*, *verun*, *zer*, and also those with *mis*, in which the principal and full accent falls on the radical syllable of the verb, and not on the prefix.

c. All *inseparable* compound verbs formed with *durch*, *hinter*, *über*, *um*, *unter*, *voll*, *wider*, and *wieder*. In these verbs the accent lies on the radical syllable of the verb, and not on the first compound.

d. *Offenbaren* and *frohlocken*.

2. In *separable* compound verbs the prefix *ge* is inserted between the two components: e. g., *aufstehen*—part. past, *aufgestanden*; *zuthellen*—part. past, *zugehellt*.

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

1. In the *interrogative* form, the subject (personal pronoun or substantive) is, in the simple tenses, placed after the verb; in the compound tenses, after the auxiliary: e. g., *lobe ich?* do I praise? *habe ich gelobt?* have I praised? *werde ich loben?* shall I praise? &c.

2. In the *negative* form the negative *nicht* is, in the simple tenses, placed after the verb; in the compound tenses, after the auxiliary: e. g., *ich lobe nicht* I praise not, I do not praise, *ich habe nicht gelobt*, *ich werde nicht loben*, &c.

3. In the *negative interrogative* form, the subject (personal pronoun or substantive) is placed, in the simple tenses, after the verb; in the compound tenses, after the auxiliary; and the negation *nicht*, in either case, after the subject: e. g., *liebe ich nicht?* *ist der Mann nicht gegangen?* *hat die Frau nicht gerufen?* *werden Sie nicht bezahlen?* &c.

Note.—The negation may either be *subjective*, i. e., relating to the predicate, or *objective*, i. e., relating to some one or other of the complementary parts of the sentence. In the former case, the complements of the predicate take precedence of the negation; and the latter stands, accordingly, at the end of the sentence, if the verb happens to be at a simple tense; or immediately before the predicate, if the verb happens to be at a compound tense: e. g., *ich sah meinen Freund lange nicht*; *ich habe meinen Freund lange nicht gesehen*. In dependent sentences, also, the negation is placed immediately before the predicate: e. g., *ich habe es ihm noch nicht geben können, da er von seiner Reise in die Schweiz noch nicht zurückgekehrt ist*. In the latter case, the negation is placed before the word to which it more immediately refers: e. g., *er hat es nicht meinem Vater gegeben, sondern meinem Bruder*; *nicht ich tadle dich heute*; *ich tadle nicht dich heute*; *ich tadle dich nicht heute*, &c. The same rules obtain equally in *negative-interrogative* sentences: e. g., *Hast du heute deinen Gast auf seinem Spaziergange nicht begleitet?* *Hast du nicht heute deinen Gast*, &c.? *Hast du heute nicht deinen Gast*, &c.? *Hast du heute*

deinen Gast nicht auf seinem Spaziergange begleitet? In objective interrogations, however, the position of the negation is more a matter of choice, and we may equally say, for instance, *warum hast du nicht heute deinen Gast auf seinem Spaziergange begleitet?* *Warum hast du heute nicht deinen Gast, &c.!* *Warum hast du heute deinen Gast nicht, &c.!* *Warum hast du heute deins Gast auf seinem Spaziergange nicht begleitet?*

SECT. III.—USE OF THE RESPECTIVE MODES, TENSES, ETC., OF THE VERB.

As regards the respective use of the several modes, tenses, numbers, &c., of the verb, the two languages may be said to correspond pretty closely.

The most notable differences may be gathered from the following remarks:—

1. The German conjugation lacks altogether the periphrastic forms constructed with *I am* and *I do*, of which the English makes such copious and extensive use. *I am writing, I do write*, cannot be rendered otherwise in German than by the simple present, *ich schreibe*; *I was writing, I did write*, by the simple imperfect, *ich schrieb*; *I have been writing, had been writing, shall be writing, &c.*, by *ich habe geschrieben, ich hatte geschrieben, ich werde schreiben, &c.*; *I am to write*, by *ich soll schreiben*; *he is to go*, by *er wird or soll gehen, &c.*

Note.—However, the participle present is used sometimes with the verb *sein*, in order to mark more pointedly the idea of the continuance of an action or condition: e. g., *der Kranke ist sterbend* the patient is dying, i. e., in the agony of death, which, of course, conveys a different meaning from *der Kranke stirbt* the patient dies; *die Gefahr ist drohend* the danger is threatening, i. e., continually threatening, different from *die Gefahr droht* the danger is imminent, *er ist noch immer leidend* he is still suffering, he continues still to suffer.

In sentences like the following, *das Bild ist reizend, entzückend* the picture is charming, enchanting, *der Mann ist nothleidend* the man is in distress, *der Beweis ist schlagend* the proof is striking, &c., the participle has completely lost its verbal nature, and assumed instead the character and signification of an adjective.

2. The German language makes a more limited use of the participial construction with the participle present than the English; it prefers, in most cases, the construction with the relative pronoun or with a conjunction: e. g., a man doing his duty deserves respect *ein Mann, welcher seine Pflicht thut, verdient Achtung*; having received his money, he left for Paris *als er sein Geld erhalten hatte, reiste er nach Paris ab*; having been one of the principal agents in Beauharnais' infamous treason, he was compelled to quit France after the fall of that monster, *da er eine Hauptrolle bei dem schändlichen Verathe Beauharnais' gespielt hatte, &c.*; I rely upon your returning me this sum by five o'clock to-morrow evening *ich verlasse mich darauf, daß Sie mir diese Summe spätestens bis morgen Abend um fünf Uhr zurückerstatten werden*; I rely upon seeing you to-morrow *ich verlasse mich darauf, Sie morgen zu sehen, &c.*

3. The English language uses the participle present as an abstract verbal substantive; the German language uses the infinitive for this purpose: e. g., *das Lesen* the reading, *das Weinen* the weeping, &c.

4. As already stated, sub. 1 and 2, the participle present is rarely used predicatively in German. *Attributively* it is used the same as in English: e. g., *der liebende Vater* the loving father. It has invariably an active signification, and ought therefore never to be employed in a passive sense, or placed in syntactic connection with objects that are not susceptible of manifesting the action implied by it. Sentences like *eine vorhabende Reise*, *eine wohl schlafende Nacht*, an intended journey, a night passed in sound sleep, *die betreffende Sache* the matter in question, are violations equally of sense and of grammar; a journey cannot be said to intend or propose anything, nor can a night be said to sleep soundly, &c. No matter whether used predicatively or attributively, the participle present always governs the same case as the verb of which it forms part: e. g., *der seine Schüler liebende Lehrer* the teacher (master) who loves his pupils; *sein Glück suchend*, *rennt Mancher in sein Verderben* seeking his fortune, many a one runs to his ruin; *Andern ihr Glück mißgönnd*, *macht der Neidische sich selbst unglücklich*; *den falschen Schmeichler seines Vertrauens würdigend*, *ward er betrogen*; *ich empfahl mich ihm, ihn meiner Hochachtung versichernd*; *ein sich der Armen eifrig annehmender Wohltäter*; *die meinem Freunde drohende Gefahr*, &c.

As regards the *participle past*, a distinction must be drawn between transitive and intransitive verbs. The participle past of transitive verbs (and also of those intransitive verbs that are conjugated with *sein*) is used in the German language both predicatively and attributively. The *participle past* of reflexive verbs, unipersonal verbs, and intransitive verbs, conjugated with *haben*, is used only as a constituent of the periphrastic forms of conjugation; but otherwise, neither predicatively nor attributively. However, a few participles of intransitive or reflexive verbs have acquired the character and signification of adjectives, viz., *abgelebt*, *befonnen*, *gesonnen*, *gedient*, *ausgedient*, *verseffen*, *vertraut*.

The *participle past* of such intransitive verbs as are conjugated both with *haben* and *sein* may be used attributively when conjugated with the latter verb—e. g., *eine gesprungene Saite*, i. e., *eine Saite, welche gesprungen ist*; but not when conjugated with *haben*; we could not say, for instance, *ein gesprungener Knabe*, in lieu of *ein Knabe, welcher gesprungen hat*. The participle past of the verb *gehen*, and also of all intransitives expressing motion, and that are conjugated both with *haben* and *sein*, is never used attributively, even though *sein* may happen to be the auxiliary. The two verbs *reisen* and *wandern*, alone form an exception from this rule; of these two verbs we have the attributive forms: *ein weit gereiseter* or *viel gereiseter Mann* (though the latter means a man who has travelled much *ein Mann der viel gereiset hat*); *mein gestern abgereiseter* or *verreiseter Freund*; *eine ins Ausland gewanderte Familie*; *ein Ausgewanderter*.

The *participle past* of transitive verbs has always *passive* signification; yet there are a considerable number of past participles of transitive verbs that are used in an *active* sense, mostly because they have lost their verbal nature, and acquired instead the character and signification of adjectives. Participles of this kind are—*beritten* (*berittene* and *unberittene Mannschaft*), *bedient* (*ein Bedienter* a servant), *beforgt*, *apprehensive*, *betrübt* (*betrühte Nachrichten* sad news, instead

betäubende Nachrichten saddening news), *erfahren* experienced (ein *erfahrener Mann*), *eingebildet* (ein *eingebildeter Mensch* a conceited man), *gelernt* (ein *gelernter Handwerker* a craftsman who has served his apprenticeship to his trade), *geschworen* (ein *geschworener Richter* a sworn judge, ein *Geschworener* a jurymen), *verdient* (ein *verdienter Mann* a deserving man), *vergessen* (ein *pflichtvergessener Mensch* a disloyal man, a man forgetful of his duty), *versucht* (ein *versuchter Freund* a tried friend), *verschwiegen* close, reserved, discreet, *verschworen* (ein *Verschworener* a conspirator), *studirt* (ein *Studirter* a learned man, a man who has studied), &c.

The participle past of *intransitive* verbs conjugated with *sein* differs in signification from the participle present of the same verbs only in this, that it expresses the *completion* of the act which the participle present represents as in course of progress: e. g., *der fallende Apfel* the falling apple, *der gefallene Apfel* the fallen apple, &c.

The participles, both present and past, are susceptible of the degrees of comparison only when used in a purely *adjective* sense: e. g., *ich habe nie eine reizendere Gegend gesehen* I have never seen a more charming country (or place), *er ist der Geliebtere und Geheirtere von Beiden* he is the more beloved and esteemed of the two, *der Geliebteste* the most beloved, &c.

True participles, like *schlafend*, *betend*, *liegend*, *gesehen*, *gestanden*, *gehört*, *geläutet*, &c., are not susceptible of the degrees of comparison; nor are certain participial adjectives, such as *beritten*, *geschworen*, *ausgedient*, *angefessen*, &c.; simply because the ideas which they respectively represent are absolute, and cannot, therefore, admit of degrees of comparison.

The participles present and past are also used *adverbially*: e. g., *ein brennend rothes Tuch* a flaming red cloth, *ein ausgezeichnet gelehrter Mann*, *siedend heisses Wasser*, *die Waaren gehen reisend ab*, *reisend schnell*, &c. A few participles only form a distinct adverb by the addition of *s*: *eilends*, *zusehends*, *vergebens*.

The custom of the language treats some of these adverbial participles actually as *attributive adjectives*, in imitation of certain purely adverbial formations that have received attributive inflections, such as, e. g., *tüglich*, *schriftlich*, &c.: *ein täglicher Besuch* a daily visit, instead of *ein täglich gemachter Besuch* a visit made daily; *ein schriftlicher Befehl* a written order, instead of *ein schriftlich gegebener Befehl* an order given in writing, &c. This application of the adverbial participle explains locutions like the following: *eine stillschweigende Bedingung*, i. e., *eine stillschweigend gemachte Bedingung* a tacit condition, a condition understood though not expressed; *eine sitzende Lebensart* a sedentary mode of life, i. e., *eine sitzend geführte Lebensart*; *die fallende Sucht* epilepsy, *reitende Post* horse mail, *fahrende Post* mail, mail coach, &c.

The past participle of verbs expressing *motion* or *sound* is used *adverbially* with the verb *kommen* to come: e. g., *er kommt gegangen*, *gelaufen*, *gerannt*, *gefahren*, *geritten*, he comes going, coursing, running, driving, riding, &c.

*Jene gewaltigen Wetterbüche
Kommen junster gerauscht und geschossen.*

The *past participle* is used sometimes also in lieu of the imperative mode: e. g., *nur nicht lang gefragt, sondern sofort gehorcht* do not ask questions (ask no questions), but obey instantly; *Frisch, Herr Nachbar, getrunken! Achtung gegeben!* pay attention! *nicht geplaudert!* do not chatter! don't chatter! &c.

The *participle future* of the *passive voice* can be formed of transitive verbs alone, and is used attributively only; it has absolutely *passive* signification: e. g., *der zu lobende Schüler* the pupil who may be praised, deserves to be praised, is to be or ought to be praised, &c.

5. The *present tense* is employed more frequently in German than in English, in lieu of the preterite, in vivid narration of past events: e. g., *Denkt euch meinen Schrecken! ich gehe gestern mit meinem Kinde bei dem Aufsteigen des Luftballs vor das Thor, komme mit ihm ins Gedränge, verliere es aus meinen Augen, und finde es erst nach einer Stunde beinahe zerdrückt und zertraten wieder* (instead of *ging, kam, verlor, fand*).

It is also frequently used in lieu of the first future, particularly in sentences containing some other word implying futurity: e. g., *Morgen reisen wir nach Liverpool* to-morrow we start (shall start) for Liverpool; *in acht Tagen komme ich wieder, und dann besuche ich dich gewiß*, &c. Or in cases where an event which is to take place at some future period is looked upon as if it were already actually accomplished: e. g., *ich will ihm die Sache vorstellen, aber ich weiß im voraus, er läßt sich dadurch nicht von seinem einmal gefassten Entschlusse abbringen*. Or, finally, also in a vivid and impassioned representation of events to come or deeds to be accomplished: e. g., *dies Schloß ersteigen wir in dieser Nacht, ermorden die Hüter, reißten dich aus deinem Kummer*, &c.

The *present tense* is also frequently employed in German to express the actual continuance of an action or state commenced or entered on at a more or less remote time; this is more particularly the case if the verb happens to be accompanied by the adverb *schon* already; the English language uses here invariably the perfect tense: e. g., *ich kenne ihn seit zehn Jahren* I have known him these ten years, *wir wohnen schon zwanzig Jahre in diesem Hause* we have lived in this house the last twenty years, *schon zehn Jahre predigt er den heiligen Kreuzzug gegen die Tyrannen* he has been preaching these ten years the holy crusade against tyrants.

The second person of the indicative present is also used sometimes *imperatively*; this is, however, invariably indicated by the imperative tone and manner of the speaker: e. g., *du gehst! go!*

6. The imperfect serves, in the German language, also as *aorist* or *historic* tense, and is employed, accordingly, as it is in English, in the narration of past events. However, in the narration of occurrences of every-day life, the *perfect* is used in lieu of the imperfect, if the narrator has not been an actual eye-witness of the event or occurrence which he relates; thus we would say, for instance, *gestern ertrank ein kleines Kind, als ich auf der Brücke stand* a little child was drowned yesterday, whilst I stood on the bridge, but *gestern ist ein kleines Kind ertrunken*; and so also *waren Sie gestern*

auch im Theater : were you yesterday also in the theatre ? but find *Sie gestern im Theater gewesen* !

7. The *perfect* and *pluperfect* are used in German the same as in English. The *perfect* is often employed in lieu of the second future : e. g., *ich werde mit Dir ausgehen, wenn ich den Brief geschrieben hab*, instead of *geschrieben haben werde* ; *sobald ich angekommen bin, werd ich dich besuchen*, instead of *sobald ich angekommen sein werde*.

The English locution *I have done*, with the present participle following, is rendered in German by the locution *ich bin fertig*, followed by the preposition *mit* with, and the abstract verbal substantive : e. g., *I have done writing ich bin mit dem Schreiben fertig*.

8. The two *futures* are used in German the same way as in English. The *first future* is often employed in lieu of the *present*, the *second future* in lieu of the *perfect*, in conjectural sentences, or sentences suggesting the probability of the action, state, or event indicated by the verb : e. g., *das kann nicht sein, du wirst dich irren* that cannot be, you are probably mistaken ; *er hört mein Klopfen nicht* ; *er wird wohl noch schlafen* he does not hear my knocking, he is probably still asleep ; *der Reisende wird verunglückt sein* the traveller has probably met with some fatal accident ; *er wird doch nicht umgekommen sein* ! surely, he cannot have perished ? *Du wirst von dem Elefanten gehört haben, daß ihm das Grollen eines Schweines Schauer und Entsetzen erweckt* you have probably heard it told of the elephant, that the grunting of a pig terrifies that noble animal and makes him shudder.

The future indicative stands also sometimes in lieu of the imperative : e. g., *du wirst sogleich schweigen* !

The English locution *I am going*, with the verb in the infinitive following, is rendered in German by the locution *ich bin* (or *stehe*) *im Begriff* : e. g., *I am going to write to him ich bin im Begriff ihm (an ihn) zu schreiben*. Or the simple future may be used : *ich werde ihm (an ihn) schreiben*.

9. The *indicative* is the mode of *positive*, the *subjunctive* the mode of *vague* and *problematical* assertion. The former denotes *reality*, *actuality*, *certainty* ; the latter, *incertitude*, *doubt*, *possibility*. The nature of the former is *objective*, inasmuch as it asserts the statement of the sentence as something *positive*, as a *fact* : e. g., *er lebt* he lives, *er ist im Gefängniß* he is in prison. The nature of the latter is *subjective*, inasmuch as it represents the statement of the sentence as a mere subjective conjecture, supposition, or notion, or as based simply on the hearsay evidence of another party : e. g., *man glaubt, er lebe noch* he is believed to be still living ; *man sagt, er sei gestorben* people say he is dead, he is stated to be dead. The *conditional* is simply a special form of the *subjunctive* mode : the *first conditional* is the compound or periphrastic form of the *subjunctive* of the *imperfect* ; the *second*, of the *subjunctive* of the *pluperfect*.

It is a very great error to suppose that *conjunctions* have the power to determine the mode of the verb ; they have not the slightest influence in this respect ; nor can the verb of the principal sentence be said to govern or determine the mode of the verb in the *dependant incidental sentence*. The respective use of either the one

or the other mode depends, as already stated, entirely upon the nature of the statement expressed in the dependent sentence. Thus we say, not only *ich weiß, daß er das gesagt hat* I know that he has said it; *ich bin überzeugt, daß es sehr viel böse Menschen giebt* I am convinced that there are a great many wicked people in this world;—but equally, *ich bin der Meinung, daß man vergeben muß* I am of opinion that we ought to forgive; *ich glaube, daß er in der Schlacht geblieben ist*; *ich weiß nicht, ob er lebt oder todt ist*; *ich wußte nicht, daß er todt war*; *wißtest du, was ich jetzt denke!* (not *düchte*); *ich weißte, daß der Kranke genesen wird*; *ich vermuthete, argwöhnte, fürchte, &c., daß er mich verrathen hat*; *ich hoffe, daß er sich wohlbe findet*. In all these examples the incidental sentence may be looked upon as the actual object of the principal proposition; thus, for instance, *ich hoffe, daß er sich wohlbe findet*, means, in other terms, *ich hoffe sein Wohlbe finden* his well-being is the object of my hope.

But in *problematic* or *conjectural* sentences, like the following, we use the *subjunctive*: *ich war überzeugt, er sei ein redlicher Mann* I was convinced he was an honest man; *man glaubt, man sagt, &c., er sei in der Schlacht geblieben* people believe, say, &c., he has fallen in battle; *ich hörte, daß er das gesagt habe*; *er vermuthet, daß man mich verrathen habe*; *ich wünschte, daß er käme*; *er fragte mich, ob ich mitgehen wolle*.

A careful comparison of the following sentences may assist the pupil in gaining a tolerably clear notion of the principle upon which the respective use of either of the two modes depends: *ich habe gehört, daß Herr N. zu einem Amte befördert ist* I have heard that Mr. N. has got an appointment, i. e., Mr. N. has got an appointment (matter of fact), and I have been informed of it—*ich habe gehört, daß Herr N. zu einem Amte befördert sei* (not matter of fact, but simply a rumour, which may be either true or false); *man hat mir erzählt, daß er an einer Krankheit gestorben ist* (matter of fact)—*man hat mir erzählt, er sei gestorben* (rumour); *er glaubt nicht, daß ich krank bin*, i. e., I am ill, but he does not believe it—*er glaubt nicht, daß ich krank sei* he does not believe in my (pretended) illness; *er fühlte, daß er Unrecht hatte, gegen seinen ehemaligen Freund auf diese Weise zu verfahren* he felt that he was wrong in acting thus towards his former friend—*er fühlte, daß er Unrecht habe* he felt (the conviction forced itself upon him) that he was wrong; *schon Philosophen des Alterthums glaubten, daß nur ein Gott ist* the philosophers of antiquity had attained to the belief in the existence of one God—*daß nur ein Gott sei* some of the philosophers of antiquity conjectured that there was only one God; *schreibe deinem Freunde, daß er den Proceß gewonnen hat* write to your friend that he has gained his cause—*daß er den Proceß gewonnen habe* that he may consider his cause as good as gained (or that there is every reason to believe that his cause has been decided in his favour); *ich will ihm etwas schenken, damit er sieht, daß ich ihm gut bin* I'll make him a present to show him my affection—*damit er sehe, daß ich ihm gut bin*, that he may see I love him.

Let the pupil compare also the following *conditional* sentences: *Wenn es regnet, so wird es naß* when it rains, the streets are wet, *wenn es regnete, so würde es naß werden* if it rained, it would be wet.

wenn ein Gott ist, so muß auch eine Vergeltung sein if there is a God there must be also a retribution—a sceptic would say *wenn ein Gott wäre, so müßte eine Vergeltung sein* if there was (were) a God, surely there would be a retribution.

The *subjunctive* may, of course, stand also in the principal sentence, if the statement of that sentence is expressed simply as a subjective conception, as something *problematical*, or as *possible* or *desirable*, or as a *supposition*—e. g., *so wäre es vielleicht besser* it may perhaps be better this way; or as a *wish* (*optative*)—e. g., *wäre er doch gesund!* would he come soon! *Gott sei mit dir!* God be with thee! *Wärest du doch so fleißig, wie du sein könntest!* *Möchte er seine Zeit besser benutzen!* *Wäre er doch bei uns!* Such *optative* sentences are frequently introduced by *daß* or *wenn*: e. g., *daß der Himmel so günstig sei!* *Wenn er doch bald zurückkäme!* *Wenn doch jeder bedächte, wie kostbar die Zeit ist!*

*O daß sie ewig grünen bliebe,
Die schöne Zeit der jungen Liebe!*

Oh! would that the happy days of first love might last for ever!

The *subjunctive* serves in German also as *potential mode*: e. g., *ich hätte wohl Lust, sie einmal zu sehen* I should like to see her; *es wäre zu wünschen, daß er vernünftiger wäre* it might be wished that he were more reasonable; *es könnte sein* it might be; *es hätte bemerkt werden sollen* it ought to have been remarked; *er sollte mir untreu sein?* he should be faithless to me? *ich wüßte wohl, was zu thun wäre* I think I could advise what ought to be done (might be done), &c.

With regard to the *tense* in which the *subjunctive* ought to stand, the general rule is, that in incidental *subjunctive* sentences, the *present*, *perfect*, and *first future* alone are employed, no matter whether the verb preceding happens to be in the present, past, or future tense: e. g., *er sagt, er sei glücklich*; *er sagte, er sei glücklich*; *er wird sagen, er sei glücklich*; *er sagt, sagte, wird sagen, er sei glücklich gewesen*; *er sagt, sagte, wird sagen, er werde glücklich sein*. *Mein Freund versichert, daß er in deinem Hause gewesen sei* (not *wäre*), *dich aber nicht getroffen habe* (not *hätte*). *Als Thales gefragt ward, was er für das Weiseste halte, antwortete er: die Zeit, denn sie hat Alles erfunden*—when Thales was asked what he considered the wisest of all things, he replied, Time, for it has invented everything.

In *conditional* sentences, the *preterital* forms alone are used; the *simple preterital* forms may be used both in the *hypothetical* and in the *conditional* sentence: e. g., *wenn er mäßig wäre, wäre er gesund* if he were abstemious, he would be well. The compound or periphrastic forms with *ich würde* are used in the *conditional* sentence alone: e. g., *wenn er mäßig wäre, so würde er gesund sein* (but not *wenn er mäßig sein würde*); *wenn ein Freund, der mit uns gehen sollte, sich einen Fuß beschuldigte* (not *beschädigen würde*), *wir würden doch lieber langsamer gehen und unsere Hand ihm gern und willig leihen*. Here again the preceding verb has no influence over the tense of the verb of the *hypothetical* or *conditional* sentence; we say, equally, *er*

sagt, er wäre glücklich (würde glücklich sein), wenn er gesund wäre; and er sagte, er wird sagen, er wäre glücklich (würde glücklich sein), wenn er gesund wäre; er sagt, er sagte, er wird sagen, er wäre gekommen (würde gekommen sein), wenn er Zeit gehabt hätte.

For the *potential*, we use only the *conditional* forms: e. g., *ich hätte wohl Lust dazu; es wäre zu wünschen*, &c.

For the *optative*, we use the *subjunctive* form (*present*), if the wish expressed is expected to be realised, or, at all events, if its realisation is considered likely: e. g., *Gott sei mit Dir! Gott bewahre Dich vor solchem Unglück! Reisen Sie glücklich! Möge er bald gesund werden!*

Lang lebe der König! es freue sich,
Wer da athmet im rofigen Licht!

Note.—This form of the optative assumes readily *imperative* signification, and is, therefore, in the third person, used as a substitute for the imperative: e. g., *er komme; er habe Geduld; hören Sie; sein Sie zufrieden*, &c.

Der Mensch versuche die Götter nicht
Und begehre nimmer und nimmer zu schauen,
Was sie gnädig bedecken mit Nacht und Grauen!

But if the wish is not thought likely to be realised, or expresses the very reverse of what is actually the case, or likely to be the case, the *simple conditional* (never the compound or periphrastic) forms are used: e. g., *wäre er doch hier, oder wäre ich bei ihm!* would he were here, or I (was) with him! *möchte er glücklich werden!* Oh! that he might be happy! i. e., I wish from all my heart he might be happy, but I am sadly afraid he will never know happiness.

Frommer Stab, o hätt' ich nimmer
Mit dem Schwerdt dich vertaufet,
Hätt' es nie in deinen Zweigen,
Heil'ge Eiche, mir geraucht!
Eilende Wolken, Segler der Lüfte!
Wer mit euch wanderte, mit euch schiffe!

10. The infinitive is mostly preceded by the preposition *zu* to. However, it stands often also without this particle, more especially—

a. As subject of a sentence: e. g., *seinen Feinden verzeihen ist edel* it is noble to pardon one's enemies. *Handeln ist leicht, denken schwer, nach dem Gedachten handeln unbequem.*—*Es ist freilich besser, Unrecht leiden, als Unrecht thun; aber es giebt ein Drittes, das vernünftiger und edler ist, als Beides: mit Muth und Kraft verhindern, daß durchaus kein Unrecht geschehe* it is indeed better to suffer wrong than to do wrong; but there is a third way, more rational and noble than either: to combat and prevent, with spirit and energy, the infliction of wrong upon whomsoever it may be.

b. After the auxiliaries of mode—*dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen, lassen*: e. g., *ich darf hoffen* I dare hope; *du kannst schreiben; er mag lieber spielen, als arbeiten.* In this point, the practice of the English language agrees with that of the German.

In certain locutions, the verb *haben* also is combined with the infinitive without *zu*: e. g., *du hast gut reden* it is easy for thee to talk,

ihr habt gut lachen it is well (easy) for you to laugh (in these sentences *haben* has the signification of *können* or *mögen*).

The verb *thun*, accompanied by *nichts* (but under no other circumstance), is also combined in this way with the infinitive: e. g., *er thut nichts, als spielen, essen, trinken und schlafen* he does nothing but play, eat, drink, and sleep.

c. With the verbs *heißen* (in the sense of *to bid, to command*), *nennen*, *helfen*, *lehren*, *lernen*, *machen*: e. g., *er hieß mich gehen* he commanded me to be gone, (he bid me be gone); *das nenne ich schlafen*; *ich half ihm arbeiten*; *er machte mich lachen*; *er lehrte mich lesen*; *ich lerne zeichnen*, &c.

d. Some verbs denoting perceptions of the senses, such as *sehn*, *hören*, *fühlen*, *finden*, and some others, expressing motion, or a state of rest, such as *gehen*, *reiten*, *fahren*, *bleiben*: e. g., *ich sah sie tanzen*; *ich hörte ihn reden*; *ich fühlte den Puls schwächer schlagen*; *ich fand ihn schlafen*; *er geht spazieren*; *er geht betteln*; *wir ritten, fuhren spazieren*; *er blieb sitzen, stehen, liegen, hangen, leben*.

In all these sentences the infinitive stands in lieu of the participle present, which is not employed in this way in German, although it is in English: *ich sah sie tanzen*, i. e., *tanzend* I saw her dancing; *er geht spazieren*, i. e., *spazierend* he goes promenading; *er bleibt sitzen*, i. e., *sitzend* he remains sitting, &c. To this class belong also certain sentences with *haben*: e. g., *er hat das Geld im Kasten liegen*, i. e., *liegend*, he has the money lying in his strong box; *er hat den Hut auf dem Kopfe sitzen*, i. e., *sitzend*, *den Degen an der Seite hangen*, i. e., *hängend*, &c.

11. The simple German infinitive has, of course, *active* signification. However, there are certain phrases in which the signification of the infinitive may also be *passive*: e. g., *ich lasse ihn machen*, *was er will* (active) I let him do what he likes, *ich lasse mir einen Rock machen* (passive) I have ordered a coat to be made for me;—*er ließ mich rufen* he let me call, he allowed me to call, to exclaim, *er ließ mich rufen* he sent for me, he had me called up, he had me called before him. Equally ambiguous are the following: *er ließ mich strafen, schlagen*; *man hört ihn oft loben* he is often heard to praise (active), or his praises are often heard (passive); *ich sah ihn zeichnen, malen*, &c. The infinitive with *zu* has *passive* signification after the following adjectives: *leicht*, *schwer*, *hart*, *möglich*, *unmöglich*: e. g., *leicht zu glauben* easy to be believed (easy to believe), *es ist unmöglich anzunehmen* it is impossible to be supposed (to suppose). In this point, again, the English language agrees with the German.

That the infinitive with *zu*, used in the capacity of an adjective attribute, has *passive* signification, has already been stated (*er ist zu loben* he is to be praised).

12. If one and the same auxiliary, in the same tense and mode, happens to apply equally to several verbs connected with each other, no matter whether in a principal or incidental sentence, the auxiliary is put only *once*, viz., in a principal sentence *before* the first, in a dependent incidental sentence after the *last* verb: e. g., *wir haben gelesen, geschrieben, gerechnet und gezeichnet*; *das sind Dinge*,

welcher ich weder selbst gesehen, noch gehört, noch gelesen habe; Dinge, die nicht zu beschreiben, sondern nur zu fühlen sind. Wenn Du Deine heftigen Leidenschaften gemüßigt, Deine Lüfte besiegt, und überhaupt Deine Sinnlichkeit den Gesetzen der Vernunft untergeordnet hast: so verdienst Du, auch in der Strohütte glücklicher genannt und höher geachtet zu werden, als der Mensch auf dem Throne, der von seinen Begierden beherrscht, von falscher Ruhmsucht geblendet und nur von gedungenen Schmeichlern gepriesen wird.

The auxiliary verbs *haben* and *sein* (but not *werden*), may be omitted, besides, in subordinate incidental sentences, if the omission does not give rise to ambiguity: e. g., *als ich dies vernommen (hatte), hatte ich nichts weiter zu thun, als, &c.* In this sentence, the laws of euphony demand the omission of the first *hatte*.

Hier, wo mir nichts als Du geblieben,
Hier ist mein letztes Vaterland.

The too frequent omission of the auxiliary verb must, however, be guarded against. In the following sentences, for instance,—*ich überzeugte mich, daß mein Freund den Werth des Glückes, das er besessen, erst ganz schätzen gelernt, seit es unwiederbringlich für ihn verloren*,—the omission of the auxiliary is carried too far; the auxiliary *hat* should here be inserted after *gelernt*, *ist* after *verloren*.

The omission of the verb *sein*, where it is not auxiliary, but stands simply as copula joining the predicative adjective to the subject, is altogether objectionable. Sentences like the following—*das ist ein Glück, womit ich sehr zufrieden; daß sie sehr unglücklich, konnte mir nicht entgehen*—are positively ungrammatical.

GOVERNMENT OF THE VERB.

(See page 55, *Government of the Substantive.*)

The rudimentary nature and restricted limits of this grammar compel me, of necessity, to confine myself here to a mere cursory intimation of the principal rules on this important subject.

I. All transitive verbs govern the accusative of the object.

Note.—Many transitives govern, besides the accusative of the object, the genitive or dative of some complement to the latter. The general rule here is, if the object happens to be a thing, the person interested or concerned is put in the dative: e. g., *der Vater schenkt dieses Buch seinem Sohne* the father gives this book to his son (the father presents his son with this book). If the object happens to be a person, the accompanying complement is put in the genitive: e. g., *der Vater beschuldigt seinen Sohn der Trägheit* the father charges his son with laziness.

The following transitives are construed with the accusative of the personal object, and the genitive of the complement accompanying it:—*anklagen, belehren, berauben, beschuldigen, besichtigen, entbinden, entblößen, entheben, entkleiden, entladen, entlassen, entlasten, entledigen, entsetzen, entwöhnen, erledigen, losprechen, mahnen, überführen, überheben, überzeugen, versichern, vertrüsten, verweisen* (only in the expres-

sion *einen des Landes verweisen* to banish one the country, to exile, to proscribe), *würdigen, zeihen*. Some of these verbs, however, are also construed with prepositions. The verb *versichern* to assure, may be construed also with the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing: e. g., *das kann ich Ihnen versichern* or *dessen kann ich Sie versichern*. But it ought never to be construed with a double accusative; it is positively ungrammatical to say *das kann ich Sie versichern*.

II. The reflexive verbs are construed with the accusative of the reflexive pronoun: e. g., *ich sehne mich, du wunderst dich, er widersetzte sich*, &c. Some reflexives, however, are construed with the dative of the reflexive pronoun: e. g., *ich getraue mir, ich schmeichle mir*, &c. If the reflexive pronoun happens to be accompanied by some complement in immediate dependence on the verb, this complement is put in the accusative if the reflexive pronoun itself stands in the dative, in the genitive if the reflexive pronoun stands in the accusative: e. g., *ich getraue* mir das nicht; ich freue mich seines Glückes*, &c.

The following reflexives govern the genitive of the complement:—*sich (einer Sache) anmaßen, annehmen, bedienen, befehlen* or *befehligen, begeben, bemächtigen, bemeistern, bescheiden, besinnen, entäußern, entblößen, entbrechen, enthalten, ent schlagen, entsinnen, entübrigen, erbarmen, erdreisten, erfrechen, erinnern, erkönnen, erwehren, freuen, getrösten, rühmen, schämen, unterfangen, unterwinden, vermessén, versehen, verwundern, wehren, weigern*. Instead of the simple genitive, the prepositive construction is also sometimes had recourse to.

III. The two verbs *fragen* to ask, and *lehren* to teach, are construed with a double accusative; viz., of the person of whom the question is asked, or to whom the matter, art, science, &c., is taught; and of the question asked, or the matter, art, science, &c., taught: e. g., *er fragte mich Vieles* he asked me much, *er lehrt mich die deutsche Sprache* he teaches me the German language. The verbs *heissen, nennen, schelten, schimpfen*, when employed in the acceptation to name, to call, to dub,—and the verb *taufen*, when used in the sense of to christen, to name, to dub,—govern also a double accusative, the second standing as predicate to the first: e. g., *er hieß (or nannte) mich seinen Freund* he called me his friend, *sie schimpfte (or schalt) ihn einen Narren* she called him a fool, &c.

IV. The following verbs, used as intransitives, govern the genitive case:—*achten, bedürfen, brauchen*, and also *gebrauchen, mißbrauchen, denken und gedenken, entbehren, entrathen, ermangeln* or *mangeln, erwähnen, genießen, geschweigen, gewahren, gewohnen* (in the sense of *gewohnt werden* to get used or accustomed to), *harren, hüten* to watch, to guard, to tend, *lachen, pflegen, schonen, spotten, verfehlen, vergessen, wahren, wahrnehmen, watten, warten*. However, only two of these verbs, *ermangeln* and *geschweigen*, admit of the genitive construction alone and exclusively. *Achten, harren*, and *warten*, are generally construed with the preposition *auf* and the accusative; *denken* and *geden-*

* *Getrauen* is also construed by some authors with the accusative of the person; thus, for instance, Gellert says, *Getraust Du Dich, mir das zu sagen*.

ten, with *an* and the accusative; and *lachen*, *spotten*, and *walten*, with *über* and the accusative. The remainder of them, and also *achten*, in the acceptation of *to esteem*, *to regard*, and *denken*, in the sense of *to imagine*, *to fancy*, are at present used in common language as *transitives*, and, consequently, construed with the accusative of the object.

V. The verbs *leben* to live, and *sterben* to die, are also sometimes construed with the genitive: e. g., *Hungers sterben* to die of hunger, *sines plötzlichen Todes sterben* to die a sudden death; *ich lebe der Hoffnung, daß dieser Plan erfolgreich sein wird* I live in hope (hopes) that this plan will prove successful; &c.

VI. That many transitive and some reflexive verbs (spurious reflexives) are construed with the dative of the person alluded to, or interested or concerned in the act or action designated or implied by the verb, has already been mentioned in the note to I.

The following *intransitive* verbs are construed with the *dative* of the person alluded to, or interested or concerned in the act or action expressed or implied by the verb: *ahnden* or *ahnen*, *ähneln*, *antworten*, *bleiben*, *danken*, *dienen*, *drohen*, *fehlen*, *fluchen*, *folgen*, *fröhnen*, *frommen*, *gleichen*, *glücken*, *helfen*, *huldigen*, *leuchten* to light (*einem nach Hause leuchten* to light one home), *mangeln*, *nahen*, *nützen*, *passen*, *schaden*, *scheinen*, *schmecken*, *schmeicheln*, *steuern*, *trauen* or *vertrauen*, *trotzen*, *wehren*, *weichen*, *winken*, *ziemen* or *geziemen*, *zürnen*; and a great many derivatives formed with the prefixes *ge*, *ent*, *er*, *mit*; and compounds with the particles *ab*, *an*, *auf*, *aus*, *bei*, *ein*, *entgegen*, *nach*, *unter*, *vor*, *wider*, and *zu*.

VII. The intransitive verbs *begegnen*, *bekommen*, *belieben*, *befagen*, and the reflexive verb *sich bequemen*, govern the dative case.

VIII. Many intransitive compounds with adjectives, adverbs of quality, or substantives, and also certain compound verbal locutions or expressions, govern the dative of the person alluded to, or interested or concerned in the act or action expressed or implied by the verb. To this class of verbs belong more especially the following: *einem wohlwollen*, *genugthun*, *gleichkommen*, *fehl schlagen*, *willfahren*, *zu Hülfe kommen*, *zu Gute kommen*, *zu Theil werden*, *von Statton gehen*, *leid thun*, *wohl thun*, *wehe thun*, *Hohn sprechen*, *Wort halten*, *das Wort reden*, *den Hof machen*; *einem Einhalt*, *Eintrag*, *Abbruch*, *Schaden thun*; and also the *transitives*, *einem etwas wahr sagen*, *weis sagen*, *weis machen*, *kund thun*, *preis geben*, &c.

To this category belong also the verbs *stehen*, *sitzen*, *lassen*, when used in the sense of *to become*, *to fit*, in conjunction with an adverb of quality: e. g., *der Hut steht ihm gut* the hat becomes him well; *wie sitzt mir das Kleid?* how does this gown (robe) fit me? &c.

CHAPTER VI.

THE ADVERB, THE PREPOSITION, THE CONJUNCTION, AND THE INTERJECTION.

a. THE ADVERB.

We have already seen, in the chapters on the adjective and on participle, that the predicative adjective and participle are susceptible of being used in an adverbial capacity. A treatise on the formation, &c., of the pure adverbs and adverbial locutions would be out of place in an elementary work like the present.

For the respective German equivalents of the English adverbs must refer the pupil to a good dictionary.

The comparison of adverbs has been treated of already in the chapter of the adjective.

With regard to the proper syntactic position of adverbs, it will suffice here to remark that, where the adverb qualifies an adjective or other adverb, it is put immediately before the word which it qualifies: e. g., *der Thurm ist sehr hoch; der Schnee ist blendend weiß; &c.* But where the adverb qualifies the verb, its position depends upon the respective nature of the sentence, and also upon the circumstance whether the verb happens to stand in a *simple* or *compound* form. In direct *principal* sentences, the adverb is placed *after* the verb* if the latter stands in a *simple*, and *before* the participle or infinitive if it stands in a *compound* form: e. g., *er freute sich sehr; das Kind schläft ganz ruhig; er that es oft; sie kommt heute; er hat sich sehr gefreut; er wird sich sehr freuen; das Kind hatte ganz ruhig geschlafen; er hat es oft gethan; sie wird heute kommen; das Kind scheint ruhig zu schlafen; er wünscht hier zu wohnen; &c.*

b. THE PREPOSITION.

SECT. I.—PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE GENITIVE CASE.

Halb, halben, halber, on account of, for, by reason of, for the sake of. (This preposition stands invariably after the word which it governs.)

Wegen for, on account of, because of, for the sake of, by reason of. (This preposition may stand either before or after the word which it governs.)

Um-willen for the sake of, for the love of, on account of. (The word governed is placed between the two components.)

* The complement or complements of the predicate of the sentence take precedence of the adverb.

Inasmuch as these prepositions denote equally a reason or motive, they are in many cases used indiscriminately. Thus, we may with equal propriety say *ich verzeihe ihm seiner Jugend halben*, or *seiner Jugend wegen*, or *um seiner Jugend willen*, I pardon him on account of his youth. However, *um willen* is used more in the sense of *for the sake of*, *for the love of*: e. g., *um Gottes willen* for God's sake; *was thut eine Mutter nicht um ihres Kindes willen!* What would not a mother do for the love of her child! *er hat es um des schnöden Gewinnes willen gethan* he has done it for the love of base lucre. The difference between *halben* and *wegen* lies principally in this, that the latter is more abstract in its application, the former more concrete. *Wegen* is used also in the sense of *for the purpose of*: e. g., *nicht Streitens wegen kam ich her* I did not come here for the purpose of quarrelling. *Wegen* denotes, also, a physical ground or cause, more particularly when represented as an obstacle to the manifestation of an action: e. g., *wegen seiner zu kurzen Flügel kann der Strauß nicht fliegen* the ostrich cannot fly on account of the shortness of his wings; *das Schiff war wegen seiner unbehüllichen Größe nicht zu lenken* the vessel could not be steered on account of its awkward size and bulk. In this latter signification *wegen* trenches on the province of *vermöge*, by virtue of, in consequence of: e. g., *der Stein fällt wegen* (more correctly *vermöge*) *seiner Schwere zur Erde* the stone falls to the ground from its weight (owing to its weight).

Halben and *wegen* were formerly often used in the sense of *concerning*, *with regard to*, *with respect to*: e. g., *Alters halber hätte er noch lange leben können* with regard to age (as far as his age went) he might have lived yet a long time. The use of *halben* and *wegen* in this acceptation is, however, getting obsolete now, and we prefer, as regards the above sentence, for instance, saying *in Ansehung seines Alters*, or *seinem Alter nach*. Yet the pronominal compounds *meinethalben*, *meinethwegen*, *deinethalben*, *deinethwegen*, &c., are still universally used in this signification, especially to denote that the person designated will not, or is not likely to, oppose any obstacle to the performance of the act, or to the occurrence of the event, expressed by the verb of the sentence: e. g., *meinethalben mag er es thun* he may do it for aught I care; *seinethalben könnte die Welt untergehen*; *meinethwegen mag er kommen* as far as I am concerned he may come, I do not wish to prevent his coming, &c.

Note.—The pronominal compounds *meinethalben*, *meinethwegen*, *um meinethwillen*; *deinethalben*, &c.; *seinethalben*, &c.; *ihrerthalben*, &c.; *unsererthalben*, &c.; *eurerthalben*, &c.; *deffenthalben*, &c.; *derenthalben*, &c.; have been spoken of already in the chapter on the pronoun. In most instances, *halben*, *wegen*, and *um-willen*, have, in these compounds, the signification of *on account of*.

Halb is used only in pronominal compounds, viz., *deffhalb*, *weshalb*, *deffenthalb*, *derenthalb*, *meinethalb*, *unsererhalb*, &c.; it serves, however, to form the following four compound prepositions: *innerhalb* within, *ausserhalb* without, *oberhalb* above, *unterhalb* below, which, of course, equally govern the genitive case.

Halber is never used after a pronoun, but only after substantives

more particularly when not accompanied by the article: e. g., *Wunders halber*, *Wohlfstands halber*, *Beispiels halber*. In this application it often forms with the substantive a compound adverb, in which case the substantive, should it happen to be of the feminine gender, receives the termination *n* or *s*: e. g., *ehrenhalber*, *krankheitshalber*, i. e., *der Ehre halber*, *einer Krankheit halber*.

Von wegen is almost obsolete now, and occurs only in a few standing phrases, such as *von Rechts wegen*, *von Amts wegen*.

Kraft and *vermöge* by the power of, by virtue of, in virtue of (by reason of, in consequence of, by means of), by dint of, may, in many cases, be used indiscriminately: e. g., *kraft* or *vermöge seines Versprechens* in virtue of his promise, *kraft* or *vermöge unseres Vertrages* in virtue of our compact (treaty), *kraft* or *vermöge meines Amtes* by virtue of my office. But in a more strictly defined sense, *vermöge* denotes a physical, *kraft* a moral, cause or reason: e. g., *alle Körper streben vermöge ihrer Schwere nach dem Mittelpunkte der Erde* by reason (virtue) of their gravity (weight), all bodies tend towards the centre of the earth; *vermöge seines Geldes kann er viel ausrichten* by the power (by means) of his money he can accomplish much. *Vermöge seiner Rechtlichkeit will der Deutsche Niemand in seinem wohlverworbenen Eigenthum stören*; *vermöge seiner Besonnenheit läßt er sich nicht durch Chimären stören, und vermöge seiner Geradheit haßt er alle Imagination*. *Kraft des mir gewordenen Auftrages* by virtue of the commission entrusted to me; in this sense *in Kraft* is sometimes said instead of *kraft*: e. g.,

— — — *daß stets der Liebste*
Ohn' Ansehn der Geburt, in Kraft allein
Des Rings, das Haupt, der Fürst des Hauses werde. (Lessing.)

— — — that the most beloved,
Without respect to priority of birth, and by virtue alone
Of the ring, should be the head and chief of the house.

Laut according to (conformably to), (as advised, as directed, as per invoice), is of kindred meaning with *nach*, *gemäß*, *zufolge*, according to, in consequence of. It implies, however, at the same time, invariably, conformity of an assertion or statement made with the contents of the report or document cited in proof: e. g., *Laut seiner Aussage, seines Schreibens, laut dieser Urkunde verhält sich die Sache so* according to his report (deposition, declaration), letter, according to this document, the matter stands so; *laut der neuesten Berichte haben die Demokraten gesiegt* according to the last reports the democrats have conquered. *Zufolge* according to, in consequence of, governs the genitive when it precedes, the dative when it follows, the word governed by it: e. g., *er that dies zufolge meines Auftrages*, or *meinem Auftrage zufolge*, he did this in consequence of my order; *zufolge der neuesten Nachrichten*, or *den neuesten Nachrichten zufolge, läßt sich wenig für unsere Sache hoffen*, according to (to judge by or from) the latest news, there is little hope for our cause. With personal pronouns, *zufolge* stands invariably after: e. g., *Ihnen zufolge*, not *zufolge Ihrer*.

Mittelt and *vermittelt* by means of. These prepositions are hardly

ever used in connection with persons, but only with things: e. g., *die Diebe stiegen mittelst einer Leiter in das Fenster und öffneten die Schlösser mittelst eines Dietrichs* the thieves scaled the window by means of a ladder, and opened the locks by means of a picklock. But we do not say, *mittelst meines Freundes erreichte ich meinen Zweck*; *durch meinen Freund*, is the correct expression (through my friend I attained my object). *Vermittelt seines Geldes und seiner Klugheit hat er sich einen großen Anhang zu verschaffen gewußt.* *Vermittelt* is also used sometimes, but rarely, to denote the period of transition from one state to another: e. g., *die Nacht folgt auf den Tag vermittelt der Abenddämmerung* day passes into night through the intermediate stage of twilight.

Diesseit this side, on this side.

Jenseit on the other side, beyond, over.

Note.—*Diesseits* and *jenseits*, which some grammarians give as prepositions, ought to be used only as adverbs: e. g., preposition, *diesseit des Flusses* on this side of the river, *jenseit des Gebirges* beyond the mountains;—adverb, *der Rhein trennt uns*; *er wohnt jenseits*, *ich diesseits* the Rhine separates us; he lives on the other side, I on this.

Anstatt or *statt* instead of, in lieu of. *Statt* separated from *an*, occurs also as an actual substantive: e. g., *an seines Vaters Statt* in his father's stead, *an meiner Statt* in my stead.

Während during (pending).

Unweit or *unfern* not far from (near).

Ungeachtet notwithstanding, may precede or follow its case.

Trotz in spite of, governs also, and, strictly speaking, even more appropriately, the dative case. It is sometimes used also to denote the equalling or surpassing an action in degree or measure, in which sense it governs invariably the dative: e. g., *sie schwatzt trotz einer Elster* she chatters like a magpie (or more or worse than a magpie).

Den Armen giebt er zwar und giebt vielleicht

Trotz Saladin, &c.

True, he gives to the poor, and gives perhaps as much as or more than Saladin, &c.

Längs and *entlang* along, govern also both the genitive and dative. *Entlang* is also found with the accusative: e. g.,

Rausche, Fluß, das Thal entlang!

*Bei dem Glanz der Abendröthe
Ging ich still den Wald entlang.*

In these sentences, however, *entlang* stands, properly speaking, in an adverbial and not in a prepositional capacity.

SECT. II.—PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE DATIVE CASE.

Aus from, out of, for, of, by, through, in, on, upon.

Bei by, near, beside, by the side of, at the side of, with, at, present at, in the presence of, in, for, notwithstanding, on, upon, to.

Binnen within, between: e. g.,

— — — *Die Briefe lauten,
Daß Carlos binnen Mitternacht und Morgen
Madrid verlassen soll.*

The letters state that Carlos is to leave Madrid between midnight and morn.

Entgegen, *gegenüber*, *zuwider*, against, opposite, contrary to, opposed to: e. g., *der Osten ist dem Westen entgegen (entgegen gesetzt)* the east is opposite the west, *er hat meinen Befehlen entgegen gehandelt* he has acted against (contrary to) my orders. *Entgegen* is also used in the sense of *towards*, *to meet*: e. g., *wir gingen unserm Vater entgegen* we went to meet our father. *Entgegen* stands invariably after the word governed by it.

Gegenüber over against, opposite, is of kindred signification with *entgegen*, but with this difference, that it excludes altogether the idea of *hostile opposition* conveyed by *entgegen* (and still more strongly by *zuwider*); it implies usually, also, a state of rest; whereas *entgegen* implies a state of motion: e. g., *das Heer rückte dem Feinde entgegen* the army went (marched) to meet the foe, *das Heer lagert dem Feinde gegenüber* the army lies encamped opposite the foe. But we say also *er stellte sich mir gegenüber* he placed himself opposite me, instead of *er stellte sich mir entgegen*, since the latter preposition might seem to imply some hostile intention of the party. *Die beiden Häuser liegen einander gegenüber* the two houses lie opposite each other, *er wohnt der Kirche gegenüber* he dwells over against the church. *Gegenüber* is used also in the sense of *in comparison to*, *compared to*: e. g., *was sind selbst die größten Werke der Menschenhand den Schöpfungen der Natur gegenüber!* what are even the most stupendous works of man compared to the creations of nature! *Gegenüber* is put almost invariably after the word which it governs; a departure from this rule is admissible only in the case of substantives, but had best be avoided even then; it is more correct to say *der Kirche gegenüber*, than *gegenüber der Kirche*.

Zuwider against, contrary to, repugnant to (counter), is also of kindred signification with *entgegen*, but with this difference, that it can be used only in abstract application. It conveys, moreover, a more decided notion of hostile opposition than is implied by the latter preposition: e. g., *die Arznei ist mir zuwider* the medicine is repugnant to me; *er hat dem Verträge zuwider gehandelt* he has acted contrary to (in violation of) the treaty; *die menschlichen Satzungen sind oft den klarsten Vorschriften der Natur zuwider* the human laws and institutions are often contrary to (against) the clearest prescriptions of nature (run counter to the clearest prescriptions of nature). *Zuwider* is always placed after the word which it governs.

Gemäß according to, conformably to, in conformity with, agreeably to: e. g., *meinem Versprechen gemäß schrieb ich heute an Ihren Vater* agreeably to my promise, I wrote to-day to your father; *handeln Sie dieser Regel gemäß* act conformably to this rule; *kleide dich doch Jeder seinem Stande gemäß* let everybody dress according to his

respective position in society. *Gemüß* is mostly placed after the word which it governs. In many cases, the preposition *nach* may be used instead with equal propriety: e. g., *er handelt seiner Überzeugung nach*, and *er handelt seiner Überzeugung gemüß*, he acts agreeably to (according to) his convictions. *Gemüß*, however, implies more strongly and positively the idea of *absolute conformity*: e. g., *einen nach der Natur malen* to paint one true to nature (not *der Natur gemüß*, since this would mean in absolute conformity with nature); *der Natur gemüß leben* to live conformably to the laws and dictates of nature (not *nach der Natur leben*, since this would mean to live after the example of nature).

Nach after, to, for, at, by, of, in, upon, conformably to. *Nach* is used also in the sense of *relative to, considering*: e. g., *dem Körper nach ist er gesund* relative to his body, he is sound and well (i. e., as far as his body is concerned); *seinem Alter nach könnte er klüger handeln* considering his age, he might act more prudently. In this signification *nach* is placed *after* the word which it governs; in the signification of *according to, agreeably to*, it is also frequently placed *after* its case.

Mit with, by, at, to.

Nächst and *zunächst* next to, next after. *Zunächst* may either be placed *before* or *after* the word which it governs; it is, however, used more frequently as an adverb than as a preposition.

Nebst and *sammt* together, with, are of somewhat kindred signification with *mit*, but they are used in a much more restricted and limited sense, signifying both simply a mere external association or connection. *Nebst* implies more particularly a connection or association of individually distinct and separate persons or things, and may, accordingly, also be rendered in English by *and*, *and also*, *and besides*, *and at the same time*; whilst *sammt* has more the signification of *including, inclusive of*; mark, for instance, the difference between *die Mutter mit ihren drei Kindern* the mother with her three children, *nebst ihren drei Kindern* besides her three children (the mother and her three children), *sammt ihren drei Kindern* together with (including) her three children. *Hier ist Papier nebst Feder und Tinte* here is paper and (and also) pen and ink; *ich nebst den Meinigen* I and my family (I and also my family); *er hat das Haus nebst dem Garten verkauft* he has sold the house, and also the garden; *auf einer Stange trägt sie einen Hut nebst einer Fahne* she carries a hat on a pole, and besides (and also) a banner; *das Haus sammt dem Garten* the house, together with (inclusive of, including) the garden (*sammt* here implies that the garden belongs to the house); *einen Baum sammt der Wurzel ausrotten* to uproot and destroy a tree, together with the root (to destroy a tree root and branch); *mich sammt meinem Regiment bring' ich dem Herzog* myself, together with my regiment, I bring the duke.

Ob over, above, on, on account of, for the sake of, at, is obsolete; its use is limited now almost exclusively to the language of poetry: e. g., *ob dem Altar hing eine Mutter Gottes* over (above) the altar *hung* a picture of the virgin (a picture of the mother of God was suspended above the altar); *Rothenburg ob der Tauber* Rothenburg or

the Tauber, *Österreich ob der Ens* Austria on the other side of the Ens (trans-Ensian Austria); *daß ihr ob unserm Glauben kämpft* that you combat for the sake of our faith (for our faith); *zage nicht ob Deinen Fehlern* be not disheartened on account of thy failings and shortcomings; *entriistet ob dem neuen Regiment* indignant at the new rule;

Jedes Biedermannes Herz

Ist kummervoll ob der tyrannischen Gewalt.

Every honest man's heart grieves and mourns on account of (over, at) this tyrannic sway.

Von of (out of), from (off), by, on, upon, about, concerning.

Zu to (into, unto), at, on, in, by, for.

SECT. III.—PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Bis till, until, as far as, up to, to.

Durch through, by, by means of, owing to, in consequence of.

Für for, instead of, in the place of.

In sentences like the following—*ein Arzneimittel für das Fieber* a remedy for (against) the fever, *Gift für die Ratten und Mäuse* poison for rats and mice—*gegen* or *wider* against, ought to be used instead of *für*, to avoid ambiguity. *Ein Mittel für das Fieber* might be misunderstood and taken for a means to favour the development of the fever, whereas *ein Mittel gegen das Fieber* a remedy against the fever, admits of no erroneous impression of the kind.

Gegen towards, to, for, against, contrary to, in comparison with, compared to, about, near.

Note.—The abbreviated form *gen* towards, to, is only rarely used now, and invariably without the article following: e. g., *gen Himmel*, *gen Osten*, *gen Westen*, *gen Rom*, &c.

Wider against, in opposition to, contrary to, is, in these acceptations, closely related to *gegen*, but with this difference, that it implies *invariably* hostility and opposition, whilst *gegen* serves also to convey the notion of a favourable leaning to or towards a person or thing.

Ohne without, irrespective of, besides, excepted, with the exception of.

Note.—In the signification of *without*, *ohne* is hardly ever followed by a substantive preceded by an article.

Sonder without, is almost obsolete now; it suffers no article after it: e. g., *sonder Zweifel* without doubt, *sonder Scheu* without fear.

Um near, round (around), about, at, for, by, (concerning, with respect to). *Um zu*, used before the infinitive, means *for the purpose of*: e. g., *ich komme um Euren Streit zu schlichten* I come for the purpose of arranging (settling) your dispute.

SECT. IV.—PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

An, *auf*, *aufser*, *hinter*, *in*, *neben*, *über*, *unter*, *vor*, *zwischen*. These prepositions govern the accusative when denoting a motion from one

ace or object to another ; the *dative* when denoting or implying a state of rest.

An at, in, on, by, to, towards, with, up, against, up to, about, of, far, as far as, till.

Auf on, upon, in, at, to, up, of, about, with, towards, after, for also pursuant to : e. g., *auf ihren Befehl* at or pursuant to her command).

Außer besides, beside, except, out of, without (also beyond : e. g., *die Sache ist außer Zweifel* the matter is beyond doubt), outside.

Note A.—With the *accusative* case *außer* is constructed only when used, in figurative application, to denote the putting or getting out of a state or condition : e. g., *er hat mich außer Stand gesetzt, ihm zu antworten* he has put it out of my power to reply to him ; *Herr Stark kam mit seinem kleinen Hute einmal außer die Mode, und zweimal wieder hinein* Mr. Stark's little hat went twice out of fashion, and came twice into fashion again ; *dies brachte mich außer alle Fassung* this made me lose all presence of mind (all control over myself).

Note B.—*Außer* stands also with the *genitive* in the locution *außer Landes* road, out of the country ; it is used also as a conjunctive adverb, in which capacity it governs, of course, no case, (the case which follows being either governed by the verb, or depending upon the relation in which the substantive stands to some other member of the sentence) : e. g., *ich fand Niemand außer einen Unbekannten* I found no one except a stranger—here the accusative is governed by the verb *finden* ; *ich bin keiner Sache bedürftig außer* I am in want of nothing but this—here the genitive is governed by *dürftig*.

Hinter behind.

In in, into, to, at, within.

Neben by, near, by the side of, at one's side, close to, with, besides.

Über over, above, at, during, about, on, upon, past, across, through, over (way of), concerning, on account of, beyond, besides, more than.

Unter under, below, beneath, among, amid, amidst, in the midst of, between, betwixt, from among, of, in, by, during.

Note.—The preposition *unter* occurs still with the genitive in two compound words, viz., *unterwegs* on the way, on the road, and *unterdessen* in the mean time, meanwhile.

Vor before, above, in preference to, from, of, through, with, ago, before, at.

Zwischen between, betwixt, among, amongst. This preposition relates invariably only to two persons or things, and differs thus from *unter* used in the same signification.

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

An, dat. and acc.
Anstatt, gen.
Auf, dat. and acc.
Aus, dat.
Außer, dat. and acc.
Außerhalb, gen.

Bei, dat.
Binnen, dat.
Bis, acc.
Diesseit, gen.
Durch, acc.
Entgegen, dat.

Entlang, gen. and dat.
Für, acc.
Gegen (gen) acc.
Gegenüber, dat.
Gemäß, dat.
Halben (*halb, halber*), gen.
Hinter, dat. and acc.
In, dat. and acc.
Innerhalb, gen.
Jenseit, gen.
Kraft, gen.
Längs, gen. and dat.
Laut, gen.
Mit, dat.
Mittelt, gen.
Nach, dat.
Nächst, dat.
Neben, dat, and acc.
Nebst, dat.
Ob, dat.
Oberhalb, gen.
Ohne, acc.
Sammt, dat.
Seit, dat.

Sonder, acc.
Statt, gen.
Trotz, gen. and dat.
Um, acc.
Um-willen, gen.
Unfern, gen.
Ungeachtet, gen.
Unter, dat. and acc.
Unterhalb, gen.
Unweit, gen.
Über, dat. and acc.
Vermittelt, gen.
Vermöge, gen.
Von, dat.
Vor, dat. and acc.
Während, gen.
Wegen, gen.
Wider, acc.
Zu, dat.
Zufolge, gen. and dat.
Zunächst, dat.
Zuwider, dat.
Zwischen, dat. and acc.

C. THE CONJUNCTION.

We distinguish in German, in the first place, between *co-ordinative* and *subordinative* conjunctions.

Co-ordinative conjunctions serve to connect words and sentences of the same syntactic rank and value: e. g., *ich und er*—I and he; *mein Bruder und ihr Vater* haben ein Haus gekauft; *sowohl* die Freude, *als* der Schmerz ist vergänglich—joy as well as grief is transitory; *er schreibt und ich lese*—he writes and I read; *er kann nicht ausgehen; denn* er ist krank—he cannot go out, for he is ill; *ich besuchte ihn gern; aber* ich habe keine Zeit—I'd gladly visit him, but have no time.

Subordinative conjunctions serve to mark the relation of inherence or dependence in which one sentence stands to another: e. g., *er schreibt, während* ich lese—he writes while I read; *er geht, weil* er krank ist, nicht aus—he does not go out, because he is ill; *ich besuchte ihn gern, wenn* ich nur Zeit hätte—I'd gladly visit him, if I had only the time.

Certain logical and syntactic relations, viz., those of simple copulation and annexation, and of opposition or antithesis, admit of the use of *co-ordinative* conjunctions alone; others, viz., those of modality and of grammatical inherence or dependence, admit of the use of *subordinative* conjunctions alone; others, finally, viz., those of time and locality, of quality, quantity, and intensity, and of causation, admit of the respective use of either.

The following systematically arranged table exhibits the German conjunctions in their several respective significations and applications:—

CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

G. RELATION OF COPULATION AND ANNEXATION.

1. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

A. Positive or Affirmative:

und and; *auch* also; *sudem* besides; *aufserdem* besides; *ingleichen* likewise, also (item); *deßgleichen* likewise (item); *sowohl*—*als auch* (*wie auch*), as well as (as also); *nicht nur* (*nicht bloß nicht allein*)—*sondern auch* not only (not alone), but also: e. g., er ist dumm *und* boshaft—he is stupid *and* wicked; er ist *nicht nur* unwissend *und* dumm *sondern auch* boshaft *und* tückisch—he is *not only* ignorant *and* stupid, *but also* wicked and spiteful; die Freude *und* der Schmerz sind vergänglich—joy *and* grief are transitory; *sowohl* die Freude, *als* der Schmerz ist vergänglich—joy *as well as* grief is transitory; *nicht bloß* die Freude, *sondern auch* der Schmerz ist vergänglich—*not* joy *alone, but* grief *also*, is transitory.

B. Negative (termed also *Exclusive*):

weder—*noch* neither—nor: e. g., ich gehe *weder* mit dir, *noch* bleibe ich zu Hause—I shall *neither* go with you, *nor* shall I remain at home.

2. CONTINUATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

A. General and Indefinite:

erst first; *zuerst* at first; *dann* then; *ferner* farther, moreover; *weiter* farther; *hernach*, *nachher*, after, afterwards; *endlich* finally, last, at length; *schließlick* lastly, finally; *zuletzt* last, at last.

B. Definite (Ordinative):

erstens, *zum ersten*, firstly, in the first place; *zweitens*, *zum zweiten*, secondly, in the second place; *zum andern* on the other hand; *drittens*, *zum dritten*; &c.

3. PARTITIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

theils—*theils*, *zum Theil*—*zum Theil*, partly—partly; *einerseits*—*andererseits*, on the one hand—on the other hand.

b. RELATION OF OPPOSITION OR ANTITHESIS.

4. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

A. Restrictive:

aber but, *allein* but (*aber* expresses the relation of antithesis in the most general and indefinite manner, and is, accordingly, often used in combination with other adversative conjunctions of a more positive signification, such as *doch*, *dennoch*; *allein* serves to introduce a positive contradiction or objection to the statement of the antecedent—e. g., ich hoffte es; *allein* ich fand mich getäuscht—I hoped so, *but* I found I was deceived in my expectation; *aber* may, accordingly, always be used instead of *allein*, but the latter cannot always

take the place of *aber*; thus, with respect to the above sentence, we may say, with equal propriety, *aber* ich fand mich getänfcht (or, ich fand mich *aber* getänfcht); but in the following sentence, for instance, ein Vater hatte zwei Söhne; der eine hieß Karl, der andre *aber* Fritz—a father had two sons, the one was called Charles, (but) (and) the other Frederic—*allein* could not be used in lieu of *aber*; *doch* yet, nevertheless, however, notwithstanding, but, for all that; *jedoch* and *dennoch*, yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, however (*dennoch* is more, *jedoch* less positively antithetical than *doch*); *deffenungeachtet* still, nevertheless, notwithstanding, refers invariably to a perfectly established and positive statement in the antecedent, whereas *doch* and *dennoch* may refer also to a mere presumption or supposition—e. g., verlängerte sich auch Dein Leben nach Deinem Wunsche und fäheft Du auch Jahrhunderte, so wird der Tod *doch* (not *deffenungeachtet*) ewig Dir, wie allen Menschen, bevorstehen—and though thy life were prolonged through centuries, still death must claim thee at last; *gleichwohl* nevertheless, notwithstanding, yet, for all that, however, is used in the same way as *dennoch*; *indess* or *indessen* however, nevertheless, in the same way as *jedoch* (*indessen* serves also as a temporal conjunction—vide infra); *vielmehr* on the contrary.

b. The repellative conjunction *sondern* but even, but on the contrary, requires invariably a negative assertion in the antecedent, and serves to add to this assertion a statement in direct contradiction or opposition to any possible affirmation of it: e. g., er ist nicht angekommen, *sondern* noch auf der Reife begriffen—he has not arrived, but (on the contrary) he continues even still on his journey; er ist nicht nur nicht in Petersburg angekommen, *sondern* (*sondern vielmehr*) noch gar nicht von London abgereift—not only has he not arrived in Petersburg, but (on the contrary) he has not even yet left London.

5. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

Entweder—oder either—or.

Note.—*Oder*, by itself, is used frequently also as a copulative or as an explanatory conjunction.

C. RELATIONS OF TIME AND LOCALITY.

I. CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

II. SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

6. CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS DETERMINING LOCALITY:

da there; *daher* thence; *dahin* thither; &c.:—

e. g., ich fand ihn *da*, *wo* ich ihn fuchte; *wo* mir's gutgeht, *da* ist mein Vaterland.

1. SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS DETERMINING LOCALITY:

wo where; *woher* whence; *wohin* whither; &c.:—

Properly speaking, these are not conjunctions in the true sense of the word, but simply conjunctival adverbs.

ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS
DETERMINING TIME.Expressing *Contemporaneity*:

then, at that time; *dann* that time; *da* then, at that time; *gleich* at the same time; *unterdessen*, *mittlerweile*, *le*, in the mean time; &c.: *er schrieb einen Brief*; *unter-
rich mit Lesen beschäftigt*.

Expressing *Anteriority*:

vor, before, previously; *ehemalig*, formerly; &c.: e. g., *ich ging spazieren*; *vorher* aber hatte er es gethan.

Expressing *Posteriority*:

now, after; *darauf* then, after that; *danach* afterwards, after; *dan*; *hernach* after that, afterwards; *später*, later, at a later time; *seitdem* since that time: e. g., *ich hatte gearbeitet*; *dann* (*darauf*, *danach*) *ging ich aus, um mich zu erholen*. Ich war vor 30 Jahren ein Kind; *seitdem* hat sich das geändert.

-The co-ordinative conjunctions of this class also (viz., those designating time) are, properly speaking, *conjunctive adverbs*.

d. RELATION OF QUALITY, QUANTITY, AND INTENSITY.

ORDINATIVE COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS:

also so, thus; *eben so* even in the same way; *so auch* thus also; *auf gleiche Weise* in the same manner; *nicht anders* not otherwise, in the same way: e. g., *er durchdringt das Licht durch die Wälder, und die Durchdringung lehrt Goethe, wird die Farben*. *So* (*eben so*) *verleiht das Glück mit Leiden*; *Verheißung eignet dem Leben*; *Vereinigung macht es schön*.

2. SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS
DETERMINING TIME.a. Expressing *Contemporaneity*:

als (*sobald als*) as (as soon as); *da* when, as; *wie* when, as; *wann* (when) when; *während* while; *indem* while, when, as; *indessen* (*indef*) meanwhile, in the mean time; *bis* till, until: e. g., *er schrieb einen Brief, während* (or *indessen*) *ich las*.

b. Conjunctions which serve to join to the statement of the principal sentence, the averment of some previous event or occurrence:

nachdem after; *seitdem* (*seit*) since: e. g., *nachdem* ich gearbeitet hatte, ging ich spazieren. *Seit* wir Kinder waren, hat sich Vieles geändert.

c. CONSECUTIVE CONJUNCTIONS:

ehe, *bevor*, ere, before: e. g., *bevor* ich ausging, hatte ich lange gearbeitet. Er pflegt uns zu besuchen, *ehe* die Rosen abgeblüht sind.

3. SUBORDINATIVE COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS:

wie as; *gleichwie* like as; *so wie* as, just as; *als* as (after and corresponding to *so* so), than (after the comparative degree): e. g., *wie* der Herbstwind die Blätter vom Baume weht, *so* leicht und spurlos endet ein Menschenleben. Der Thor läßt sich *eben so* wenig klug machen, *als* ein Mohr sich weiß waschen läßt. Er ist größer, *als* sein Bruder.

9. CO-ORDINATIVE PROPORTIONAL CONJUNCTIONS:

desto, um so (scil. *mehr oder weniger*), the more (the less): e. g., *das Leben ist nur kurz; um so (desto) sorgfältiger muß man es nützen.* These conjunctions correspond also to the subordinate proportional conjunction *je*.

4. SUBORDINATIVE PROPORTIONAL CONJUNCTIONS:

je the, corresponds to *desto, um so*: e. g., *je mehr er sich Mühe gab, seinen Endzweck zu erreichen, desto mehr fuchten ihn seine Feinde darnach zu hindern.* Man muß das Leben *um so* sorgfältiger nützen, *je kürzer* es ist. In some instances *je* is repeated, the second taking the place of *desto* or *um so*: e. g., *je länger, je lieber.* *Je nachdem*, in proportion to, according to: e. g., *Du erhältst Lob oder Tadel, je nachdem Du es verdienst.* This conjunction is, however, used sometimes also in the sense of *as, just as*: e. g., *Sie können es thun oder lassen, je nachdem es Ihnen gut dünkt—you may do it or leave it alone, just as you please.*

10. CO-ORDINATIVE RESTRICTIVE CONJUNCTIONS:

insofern, in so weit, in as far, in as much, followed by *inwiefern, in wie weit*, or simply by *als*: e. g., *ich habe ihm insofern mein Wort gehalten, inwiefern (or als) es in meinen Kräften stand.*

5. SUBORDINATIVE RESTRICTIVE CONJUNCTIONS:

inwiefern, wiefern, also *insofern, sofern*, standing in lieu of *insofern, als*; *in wie weit* or *in so weit*, in as much as, in as far as: e. g., *ich habe ihm mein Wort gehalten, inwiefern (or also insofern) es in meinen Kräften stand.* Er hat Recht, *sofern* ich ihn verstehe. Ich werde Dir gern behülflich sein, *in so weit* es meine Zeit erlaubt.

6. RELATION OF CAUSATION.

11. CO-ORDINATIVE ILLATIVE (OR CONCLUSIVE) CONJUNCTIONS:

a. which connect to the (logical) ground, argument, or premise, the conclusion or consequence:

also therefore, consequently (then); *folglich* consequently; *mithin* consequently; *sonach* therefore, accordingly; *demnach* according to that, therefore, consequently, accordingly: e. g., *A und B sind jeder so alt wie ich; also ist auch der Eine so alt wie der Andere.*

b. to the (physical) cause, the effect:
daher hence (therefore, in conse-

6. SUBORDINATIVE ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS:

so daß so that; and the relative pronominal adverbs *wonach* (woher) whence, on which account; *weßhalb*, *weßwegen*, wherefore, on which account; which correspond to the demonstrative pronominal adverbs *daher*, *darum*, &c.: e. g., *es hat gestern stark geregnet, so daß die Wege naß sind.* Ich befand mich nicht ganz wohl, *weßhalb* ich zu Hause blieb.

Note.—The demonstrative forms *demnach*, *deswegen*, and more particularly *daher*, are frequently used

thereof): e. g., es hat gestern
regnet; *daher* sind die Wege naß.

the (moral) motive, the act:

therefore, for that reason (in
consequence thereof); *darum*, *des-
wegen*, *um deswillen*, on
account, therefore, for that rea-
son; this reason: e. g., die Wege
sind nicht trocken; *deshalb* (*des-
wegen*) blieb ich zu Hause.

s.—*daher*, *darum*, *deswegen*,
um deswillen, may also
be used as a subordinate incidental sen-
tence which contains the physical or
cause or reason, and is intro-
duced by the conjunction *weil* be-
cause; e. g., ich bin *darum* (*deswegen*)
zu Hause geblieben, *weil* ich die
Wetter schlecht fand.

also as subordinative illative con-
junctions: e. g., ich befand mich
nicht ganz wohl, *daher* ich zu Hause
blieb.

ORDINATIVE CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS:

for (because); *nämlich* for (for
that reason): e. g., Ihr Sohn wird
nicht etwas leisten; *denn* es fehlt
an Ernst und die Liebe zur Thät-
igkeit. Er konnte nicht kommen;
; *nämlich* schon lange Zeit
—he could not come; for (for
that reason) he has been ill a long
time and continues still so.

ORDINATIVE FINAL OR INTENTIONAL CONJUNCTIONS:

zu dem Ende, *darum*, *deswegen*,
in order to, for that purpose, with
a view: e. g., er soll sich bessern;
er (zu dem Ende) bestrafte ich

ORDINATIVE CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS:

unless; *sonst* else, otherwise:
ich bleibe zu Hause, Sie müssen
nicht *denn* sehr bitten—I (shall)
not stay at home unless you (should)
ask me very much; ich muß
mitgehen; *sonst* würde ich mit-
gehen.

s.—The conditional conjunc-
tions *denn* and *sonst* are, properly

7. SUBORDINATIVE CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS:

weil, *da*, since, because; *nun* since,
now that: e. g., er wird niemals etwas
leisten, *weil* (or *da*) er nicht fleißig ist.
Nun er da ist, bin ich zufrieden.

8. SUBORDINATIVE FINAL OR INTENTIONAL CONJUNCTIONS:

auf daß, *damit*, that, in order that;
um zu in order to: e. g., ich strafe
ihn, *damit* er sich bessere (or *um* ihn
zu bessern).

9. SUBORDINATIVE CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS:

wenn (so) if; *falls* in case; *wofern*
if, in case; *wo nicht* (wofern nicht) if
not, unless; *wenn anders* if indeed;
wenn anders nicht unless indeed;
aufßer wenn except if: e. g., ich
bleibe zu Hause, *wenn* Du mich
nicht sehr bittest. *Wenn* (falls) ich
nicht schreiben mußte, würde ich
mit Dir gehen. *Wenn* das Wetter

speaking, simply conjunctive adverbs; *denn*, when used in the capacity of a conditional conjunction, is treated altogether as an adverb, and takes in the sentence the position usually assigned to that part of speech.

günstig ist, so werde ich die Reise in acht Tagen antreten; *wofern* Du mich begleiten willst, so veräume die Zeit nicht.

15. CO-ORDINATIVE CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS:

zwar indeed, true (it is true), certainly (allowing or conceding it to be so); *wohl* indeed (probably, perhaps). A concessive sentence is always followed by an adversative sentence: e. g., *zwar* hat er sich gegen mich nicht gut gezeigt; *allein* sein Charakter im Allgemeinen verdient meine Achtung. *Wohl* wird die Tugend oft vom Unglück heimgefuht; *aber* sie verbreitet dann nur desto größeren Glanz.

10. SUBORDINATIVE CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS:

ob though; *ob auch*, *obgleich*, *obschon*, *obwohl* (*obzwar*), *wiewohl*, *wenn auch*, *wenn gleich*, *wenn schon*, though, although; *ungeachtet* notwithstanding that, though, although: e. g., *obwohl* (or *obschon*) er sich gegen mich nicht gut benommen hat, so verdient sein Charakter im Allgemeinen doch meine Achtung. *Obgleich* (or *wenn gleich*) die Tugend oft vom Unglück heimgefuht wird, so verbreitet sie doch im Unglück nur desto größeren Glanz.

SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

f. RELATION OF MODALITY.

11. MODAL CONJUNCTIONS.

These serve to add to the principal sentence an adverbial sentence which modifies or determines the act or occurrence averred in the former: *indem* while (rendered more correctly in English by means of the preposition by and the participle present, or even simply by the latter without the preposition)—e. g., er grüßte mich, *indem* er sich verbeugte—he saluted me, by bowing to me (bowing to me); *sodas* so (in such a way, in such a manner) that—e. g., sprich *so*, daß man Dich verstehe—speak in such a manner (so) that people may understand thee (speak in a manner to be understood); *als ob*, *als wenn*, *wie wenn*, as if—e. g., er stellt sich an, *als ob* er krank wäre (or *als* wäre er krank)—he demeans himself in a way as if he was ill—he feigns to be ill.

g. RELATION OF GRAMMATICAL INHERENCE OR DEPENDENCE.

12. CONJUNCTIONS OF ADJECTIVE SENTENCES.

A. Explanatory or Declaratory Conjunctions:

als as; *wie* as, like, such as; *nämlich* viz.; *namentlich* particularly: e. g., Einige Schüler machen mir sehr viel Freude; *als* A, B, und C—I am greatly pleased with some (of my) pupils, with A, B, and C, *for instance*; *wie* A, B, und C—as with A, B, and C; *nämlich* A, B, und C, viz. (i. e.), with A, B, and C (this excludes all the other pupils);

essentially A, B, und C—*particularly* with A, B, and C (this does not exclude the other pupils, but marks simply the greater satisfaction felt with regard to those three). Mein Freund, *als* ein rechtschaffener Mann, konnte auf jenen Antrag nicht eingehen. Ein unschuldiges Vergnügen, *wie* das Ballspiel, wird Dir gern erlaubt.

B. *Exceptive Conjunctions:*

which can stand only after a negation: *als* but, except; *denn* but, except (than); *aufser* except: e. g., Keiner, *als* der Gute, kann für wahrhaft glücklich gehalten werden. Niemand, *denn* (*als*) er, hat es gethan.

13. CONJUNCTIONS OF SUBSTANTIVE SENTENCES:

daß that; *ob* (problematical conjunction) whether: e. g., ich weiß, ich glaube, &c., *daß* er krank ist—I know, believe, &c., that he is ill; ich weiß nicht, *ob* er krank ist—I know not whether he is ill; er fragte mich, *ob* ich krank sei; ich zweifle, *ob* er krank oder gesund ist—I doubt whether he is well or ill; ich zweifle (daran), *daß* er krank ist—I doubt his being ill (i. e., I do not believe that he is ill, though represented to be so either by himself or by other parties).

ON THE INFLUENCE WHICH THE CONJUNCTIONS EXERCISE OVER THE RESPECTIVE SYNTACTIC SEQUENCE OF THE SEVERAL PARTS OF A SENTENCE, AND ON THE PLACE WHICH THEY THEMSELVES OCCUPY IN THE SAME.

I. The *subordinative conjunctions* stand invariably at the head of the incidental dependent sentence, and require the verb at the end of the sentence (separable compounds being put in their connected forms): e. g., *weil* der Mensch sterblich ist—*als* der Vater von der Reise zurückkam—*wenn* die Sonne aufgeht.

II. The *co-ordinative conjunctions* are divided, in this respect, into three classes; viz.,

a. The genuine conjunctions *und*, *oder*, *allein*, *sondern*, *denn* (in the sense of *for*), stand invariably at the head of the sentence, and have no influence whatsoever over the respective succession of the other parts; they suffer no other conjunction immediately before them: e. g., Fritz hat gute Anlagen; *allein* er ist nicht fleißig—. Beide Brüder können nur wenig Fortschritte machen; *denn* Karl hat nur geringe Fähigkeiten, *und* Fritz hat keinen Fleiß. Er schreitet nicht nur nicht vorwärts, *sondern* er scheint immer weiter zurückzukommen.

b. The two conjunctions *aber* and *nämlich*, may either stand at the head of the sentence, or in some other part of it; they mostly affect the position immediately after the subject and before the predicate; they exercise no influence over the respective succession of the several parts of the sentence; they may be preceded by a subordinative conjunction: e. g., ich ging gerne mit Euch ins Holz; *aber* das Wetter ist doch zu unficher (or das Wetter ist aber zu unficher). Der Vater *aber* ist damit unzufrieden. Mein Bruder hat noch eine

andere Verhinderung: nämlich sein Musiklehrer wird heute kommen (or sein Musiklehrer wird *nämlich* heute kommen).

c. All the other co-ordinative conjunctions have the character of conjunctive adverbs, and are, therefore, as regards their place or position in a sentence, treated mostly in the same way as adverbs. They may accordingly stand at the head of the sentence, or in some other part of it, in the place usually assigned to the adverb. In the latter case they have no influence whatsoever over the order or succession of the words: e. g., ich habe ja *auch* nicht gesagt, daß die Sache ganz ausgemacht sei; Du kannst mich *also* keiner Unwahrheit zeihen. Er hat es *doch* gethan, obwohl es ihm verboten war. In the former, the subject is placed after the verb: e. g., *Auch* habe ich nicht gesagt, daß die Sache ausgemacht sei; *also* kannst Du mich keiner Unwahrheit zeihen. *Erstens* war das Wetter schön, *zweitens* hatte ich keine Geschäfte: *darum* ging ich spazieren.

d. THE INTERJECTION.

The interjections of a foreign tongue belong more properly to the domain of the dictionary than to that of the grammar.

All that need be mentioned here on the subject of this chapter, is, that the interjections *o* and *ach*, and also *pfui*, are commonly followed by the genitive case, or by the preposition *über* with the accusative: e. g., *o* des Thoren! *ach* des Wonnetages! *pfui* der Schand! or *o* über den Thoren! *pfui* über die Schande!

The so-called *spurious* interjections *wohl*! *Heil*! *wehe*! &c., are always followed by the dative; but this case is governed by the verb *sein* understood: e. g., *wohl* ihm! (i. e., *wohl* sei ihm! or *wohl* ist ihm!) *Heil* Dir! (*Heil* sei Dir! or *Heil* werde Dir! *wehe* (ist or sei) mir, Dir, ihm! &c.

APPENDIX.

The syntactic order of words in German differs materially from that in English. A long string of rules on this subject* would, however, rather serve to perplex than to guide the student. The best, in fact the *only* way, of becoming thoroughly acquainted with it in all its niceties and intricacies, is the *practical* way, viz., the *attentive reading and careful literal translation of the works of good authors*. The "German Reader," which will be published in connection with this Grammar, will be found to contain a collection of some of the best German works, both in prose and verse.

* The most important elementary rules on the subject have, moreover, been given already in the respective chapters on the verb, adverb, and conjunction.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS GRAMMAR WILL BE PUBLISHED,

Price One Shilling,

A GERMAN READER,

FOR

THE USE OF ENGLISH STUDENTS.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—Extract from the First Book of Schiller's History of the Thirty Years' War; with *Interlinear Translation*, *Literal Translation*, and *Free Version*, in English.

PART II.—SECTION I. Choice Collection of Maxims, Aphorisms, Fragments, Short Extracts, &c., from the Works of *Giarve*, *Lichtenberg*, *Lessing*, *Göthe*, *Schiller*, *Reinhard*, *Jean Paul*, *Wieland*, *Justus Möser*, *Heeren*, *Engel*, *Herder*, *A. v. Humboldt*, *W. v. Humboldt*, *L. Börne*, *v. Feuerbach*, *A. Ruge*, *Fr. Jacobs*, *Jacobi*, *Pestalozzi*, *Lavater*, *Joh. v. Müller*, *C. v. Rotteck*, *v. Kleist*, *Mendelssohn*, *v. Stolberg*.

SECTION II. *Göthe*—Shakspeare verglichen mit den Alten und Neuesten; *Schiller*—das Inquisitionsgericht; *W. Hauff*—Extract from "die Memoiren des Satan;" *Engel*—Tobias Witt; *I. Kant*—Extract from "die Kritik der praktischen Vernunft;" *Wieland*—Extract from "die Abderiten;" *Seume*—Extract from "der Spaziergang nach Syrakus;" *Joh. v. Müller*—"des Schweizerlandes erste Gestalt" (historic fragment); *L. Börne*—der Esküpfeler; *H. Heine*—Extract from "die Reifebilder; *Krummacher*—die Blumenlese; *Jean Paul*—Zeit und Zeitgeist; *Zschokke*—Kriegerische Abenteuer eines Friedfertigen.

PART III.—POEMS. *Göthe*—Poetic Fragments, and "der Erlkönig; *Schiller*—die unüberwindliche Flotte, and die Götter Griechenlands; *A. W. Schlegel*—Arion; *Körner*—Monolog Soliman's, and Monolog Zriny's; *Lichtwer*—der kleine Töföel; *Uhland*—des Sängers Fluch; *v. Zedlitz*—die nächtliche Heerfchau; *Schubart*—die Fürstengruft; and a few lesser Poems by *Schlegel*, *Pfeffel*, *Salis*, *Streckfuß*, *Lanybein*, &c.

PART IV.—TRANSLATIONS FROM SHAKSPEARE. (*Schlegel* and *Tieck*). *Hamlet*—act i. 2, "O, that this too, too solid flesh would melt," &c.; ii. 2, "O, what a rogue and peasant slave am I," &c.; iii. 1, "To be, or not to be," &c.; v. 1, Churchyard Scene. *Merchant of Venice*—act i. 1, "Let me play the fool," &c. (*Gratiano*); iv. 1, "I have possessed your grace of what I purpose," &c. (*Shylock*); "The quality of mercy is not strained," &c. (*Portia*). *As you like it*—act ii. 7, "All the world's a stage," &c. (*Jagues*); viii., From "Salutation and greeting to you all," (*Touchstone*), to "He uses his folly like a stalking horse," &c. (*Duke*). *Measure for Measure*—act iv. 1, "But to die, to go we know not where," &c. (*Claudio*). *Julius Cæsar*—act iii. 2, Speeches of Brutus and Mark Antony; iv. 3, Brutus and Cæsar. *King Henry VIII.*—act iii. 2, "Farewell, a long farewell to all my greatness" (*Wolsey*). *King Lear*—act iv. 6, "Come on, sir, here's the place," &c. (*Edgar*). *King Richard III.*—act i. 1, "Now is the winter of our discontent," &c. (*Gloster*).

MR. WEALE'S

NEW SERIES OF EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

1. **Outlines of the HISTORY OF ENGLAND** with special reference to the origin and progress of the English Constitution, by Wm. Douglas Hamilton, of University College, with illustrations 1s
2. ——— Continuation, bringing the History down to a recent period 1s
- * * * This history is designed to communicate, in an accessible form, a knowledge of the most essential portions of the great works on the English Constitution, and to form a text-book for the use of Colleges and the higher classes in Schools.
3. **View of the HISTORY OF GREECE**, in connection with the rise of the arts and civilization in Europe, by W. D. Hamilton, of University College 1s
- "To Greece we owe the Arts and Sciences, but to Rome our knowledge of them."
4. **HISTORY OF ROME**, considered in relation to its social and political changes, and their influence on the civilization of Modern Europe, designed for the use of Colleges and Schools, by the same ... 1s
5. **A Chronology of Civil and Ecclesiastical History, Literature, Science, and Art**, from the earliest time to 1850, by Edward Law, vol. i. 1s
6. ——— vol. ii. 1s
7. **Grammar of the English Language**, for use in Schools and for Private Instruction, by Hyde Clarke, Esq. 1s
8. **Dictionary of the English Language**, comprehensive and concise, do. 1s
9. **Grammar of the Greek Language**, by H. C. Hamilton ... 1s
10. **Dictionary of the Greek and English Languages**, vol. i. by H. R. Hamilton 1s
11. ——— vol. ii. by the same 1s
12. ——— **English and Greek Languages**, vol. iii. by the same ... 1s
13. **Grammar of the Latin Language**, by H. C. Hamilton ... 1s
14. **Dictionary of the Latin and English Languages**, vol. i. by H. R. Hamilton 1s
15. ——— vol. ii. by the same 1s
16. ——— **English and Latin Languages**, vol. iii. by the same ... 1s
17. **Grammar of the French Language**, by D. Varley 1s
18. **Dictionary of the French and English Languages**, vol. i. by D. Varley 1s
19. ——— **English and French Languages**, vol. ii. by the same ... 1s
20. **Grammar of the Italian Language**, by Alfred Elwes, Professor of Languages 1s
21. **Dictionary of the Italian, English, and French Languages**, vol. i. by the same 1s
22. ——— **English, Italian, and French Languages**, vol. ii. by the same 1s
23. ——— **French, Italian, and English Languages**, vol. iii. by the same 1s
24. **Grammar of the Spanish Language**, by the same 1s
25. **Dictionary of the Spanish and English Languages**, vol. i. by the same 1s
26. ——— **English and Spanish Languages**, vol. ii. by the same ... 1s
27. **Grammar of the German Language**, by G. L. Strauf, Ph. Dr. 1s
28. **German Reader**, by the same 1s
29. **Dictionary of the English, German, and French Languages**, vol. i. by Nicolas Esterhazy S. A. Hamilton 1s
30. ——— **German, English, and French Languages**, vol. ii. by the same 1s
31. ——— **French, English, and German Languages**, vol. iii. by the same 1s

JOHN WEALE, 59, HIGH HOLBORN, LONDON.







